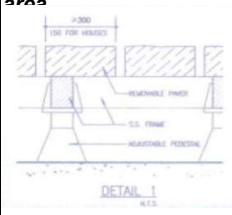
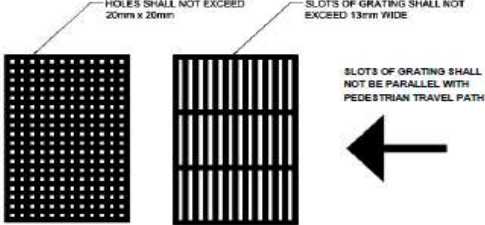
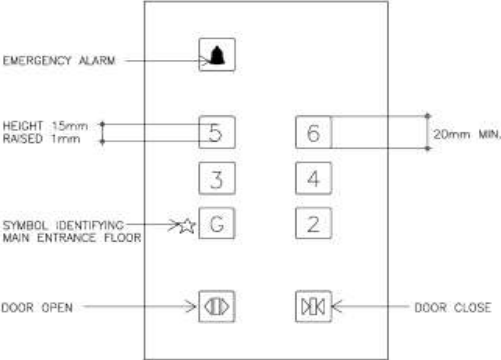


DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
1.5 mm & 2mm	<i>Code of Practice for Fire Safety in Buildings 2011</i>	TABLE E4 - FLOORS AND LANDINGS and TABLE E6 - REINFORCED CONCRETE COLUMNS AND BEAMS	<i>Reinforcement consisting of expanded metal lath or a wire fabric not lighter than 0.5kg/m2 with 2mm diameter wire at not more than 100mm centres or a continuous arrangement of links at not more than 200mm centres should be incorporated in the concrete cover at a distance not exceeding 20mm from the face</i>	
	<i>Practice Note for Authorized Persons, APP-116</i>	Aluminium Windows	<p>4. Window members, transoms and mullions together with the glass panes should be of adequate size and strength taking into consideration the location, height and orientation of the windows. Window frames should be securely and rigidly fixed in place to window openings in walls. Where fixing lugs are adopted, they shall be of stainless steel or hot dip galvanized steel having a minimum material thickness of 1.5mm and be placed at 300mm centres maximum. Where a spacing greater than 300mm is proposed, the AP/RSE should satisfy that the performance of the windows including structural stability and waterproofing would not be compromised. Adequate site supervision should be provided to check that all the fixing lugs are properly fixed.</p> <p>5. All structural members of a window section shall have a minimum aluminium thickness of 2mm and the depth of the mullion section shall not be less than 38mm . Particular attention shall be paid to the fixing details of the hinges. All hinges and fastening mechanisms adopted in the installation shall be able to withstand the positive and negative pressures due to the designed wind conditions when the window is closed and shall be of adequate size and strength commensurate with the size of the window.</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
2.5 mm	<i>Practice Note for Authorized Persons, APP-116</i>	<i>Aluminium Windows Appendix B Guidelines on Fixing of 4-bar Hinges</i>	<p>4-bar hinges shall be manufactured from stainless steel with adjustable friction shoe, and all stainless steel bars of the hinge shall have a minimum thickness of 2.5mm. For better corrosion resistance, stainless steel rivets/screws shall be used for the fixing of hinges and aluminium rivets shall not be used as they tend to corrode. At least 3 Nos. of 4.8mm diameter stainless steel rivets or 5mm diameter stainless steel screws shall be used to fix each bottom and top bars of the hinge to the window frame and the openable sash.</p> <p>2. As stainless steel hinges and rivets/screws are used in aluminium window installation, due consideration and measures should be taken to prevent contact between dissimilar metals.</p> <p>3. To provide sufficient anchorage for the stainless steel rivet or screw to fasten the hinge to the window frame and the openable sash, a positive mechanical fixing, for example by inserting a stainless steel or hot dip galvanized steel plate or bar/angle of not less than 3mm thick inside the section to provide sufficient threads for the screw(s) shall be adopted. A typical example of this arrangement is at Annex I.</p> <p>As an alternative, the window sections for fixing the hinge may be thickened locally to not less than 5mm. A typical example is at Annex II.</p> <p>When insertion of an extra piece of stainless steel or hot dip galvanized steel bar/angle inside the section or local thickening to 5mm is not adopted, the thickness of aluminium sections for fixing the 4-bar hinge shall be substantiated by calculations that it could provide sufficient anchorage for the stainless steel rivet or screw.</p> <p>4. The length of the 4-bar hinge should be at least 60% of the width of the side hung casement window.</p>	
	<i>Code of Practice for Fire Safety in Buildings 2012</i>	TABLE E5 - STEEL COLUMNS AND BEAMS	<p>HOLLOW PROTECTION -</p> <p>Columns and hangers (mass per metre not less than 45kg)</p> <p>(a) Solid bricks of clay, concrete or sand lime reinforced in every horizontal joint with steel binding wire not less than 2.5mm in thickness or steel mesh weighing not less than 0.5kg/m²</p>	
3 mm	Building (Refuse Storage and Material Recovery Chambers and Refuse Chutes) Regulations (Cap. 123 sub. leg. H)	<p>14. Bends or offset in any refuse chute prohibited</p> <p>23. Construction of hopper</p>	<p>(4) Every hopper and frame shall be constructed of galvanized or stainless mild steel plate, of not less than 3 mm thickness, or other approved material.</p> <p>(4) Every hopper and frame shall be constructed of galvanized or stainless mild steel plate, of not less than 3 mm thickness, or other approved material.</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
5 mm	APSEC Discussion Forum on 17 March 2017	<p>Modification/Exemption from B(C)R 35 & 49(1) (a) Provision of additional drainage channels, each with at least 2 no. of drainage outlets; and (b) Provision of a fall of not less than 1:80 on the flat roof or external ground sloping away from the adjoining internal/usable floor area.</p> 	<p>The proposed design with removable pavers/ timber decking units with gaps in-between would generally be acceptable without the need to provide open channel with grating cover on the slab, providing that the following design criteria were met:</p> <p>(a) The total aggregate area of all gaps between units for discharge of surface water was not be less than that of the required cross-sectional area of the drain outlets underneath the units ; and</p> <p>(b) The gaps between the units should at least be 5mm wide, and 10mm adjoining internal area.</p> <p>BD further clarified that notwithstanding the surface of the outdoor units flush with the internal area, if the level difference between the external ground (with adequate drainage outlets) below the units and the adjoining internal was not less than 150mm, application for modification of B(C)R 35 or 49(1) would not be necessary</p>	
10mm	Code of Practice for Fire Safety in Buildings 2013	Clause C16.3	Except for fire rated doors with hold-open devices complying with Clause C16.2, all fire rated doors should be provided with a notice on both sides stating in English and Chinese with words and characters , not less than 10mm high , as follows	
		Clause C16.4	All fire rated doors should be closely fitted around their edges to impede the passage of smoke or flame. The bottom gap between such doors and the floor should not exceed 10mm.	
		TABLE E3 - WALLS NOT CONSTRUCTED WHOLLY OF NON-COMBUSTIBLE	HOLLOW CONSTRUCTION - (b) 2 layers of 10mm thick gypsum plaster board with gypsum plaster finish	
		TABLE E5 - STEEL COLUMNS AND BEAMS	(c) Gypsum plaster on 10mm gypsum plaster board with 1.6mm diameter wire binding at 100mm pitc	
	Building (Refuse Storage and Material Recovery Chambers and Refuse Chutes) Regulations	19. Ventilating pipe for refuse chute	3 (b) The least dimension of every such aperture shall be not more than 10 mm.	
15mm	Code of Practice for Fire Safety in Buildings 2011	Clause D9.2	A notice should be displayed outside the liftwell indicating the fireman's lift by the words 'FIREMAN'S LIFT' and“ 消防員升降機” in English and Chinese and the floors served . The height of the words and characters on the notice should be not less than 15mm .	
		80. Lift Control Buttons	(6) Such Braille and tactile markings shall be in Arabic numerals and/or symbols. Tactile markings shall have a minimum dimension of 15 mm high and be raised 1 mm minimum.	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
15mm	Design Manual Barrier Free Access 2008	<p>Division 6 ---DROPPED KERBS</p> <p>21. Requirements Dropped kerb shall be constructed as follows:</p>	<p>(d) with a level difference of not more than 15 mm with the vehicular areas ;</p>	
		<p>Division 7 ---STEPS AND STAIRCASES</p> <p>25. Dimension and Orientation</p>	<p>The required staircases and the main circulation staircase in common areas of a building shall</p> <p>(i) be constructed with treads not less than 225 mm in width (measured at the centre of the flight) from the face of one riser to the face of the next riser and with risers not more than 175 mm in height;</p> <p>(ii) have risers built with vertical or receding face not more than 15 mm from the vertical , without a projecting nosing;</p> <p>(iii) have not more than 16 steps in any flight without the introduction of a landing ;</p> <p>(iv) be provided on both sides with properly fitted handrails (see paragraph 28(2));</p> <p>(v) be provided with non-slip nosing in contrasting colour ; and</p> <p>(vi) have risers reduced to not more than 160 mm high and treads increased to not less than 280 mm wide for greater ease of use for external steps and stairs.</p>	
20mm	Code of Practice for Fire Safety in Buildings 2011	<p>Clause D7.4 , Clause D14.5</p>	<p>A notice in the following form indicating the fire service access point should be displayed at a conspicuous position outside the building near the point:</p> <p>The height of the words and characters on the notice should be not less than 20mm . Such notice should be either illuminated by two separate systems of electric light or a type of safety sign which is self-energized in respect of luminosity and which requires no external source of power</p> <p>Fireman's Lift Firefighting and Rescue Stairway 消防員升降機 消防和救援樓梯間</p>	
		<p>TABLE E4 - FLOORS AND LANDINGS and TABLE E7 - STAIR</p>	<p>* Reinforcement consisting of expanded metal lath or a wire fabric not lighter than 0.5kg/m² with 2mm diameter wire at not more than 100mm centres or a continuous arrangement of links at not more than 200mm centres should be incorporated in the concrete cover at a distance not exceeding 20mm from the face.</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
20mm	Design Manual Barrier Free Access 2008 (Cap. 123 sub. leg. F)	32. Channel covers	(2) The dimension of any hole in such cover or between such covers shall be not more than 20 mm . 	
20mm		42. Door thresholds	A door threshold shall be— (a) not more than 20 mm in height ; and	
20mm	Design Manual Barrier Free Access 2008 (Cap. 123 sub. leg. F)	B. Recommended Design Requirements 80. Lift control buttons Third Schedule—Part 2—Division 19	(4) All buttons referred to in subsections (1) and (2) shall have a dimension of not less than 20 mm . (4) All lift control buttons shall have a minimum dimension of 20 mm (see Figure 41).	
		B. Recommended Design Requirements Keypad design	The keypad should: (i) have control buttons of minimum dimension of 20 mm ;  Figure 41 – Tactile Graphic for Lift Control Buttons	
	Practice Note for Authorized Persons APP24	Railway Protection under Railways Ordinance, Mass Transit Railway (Land Resumption and Related Provisions) Ordinance and Area Number 3 of the Scheduled Areas in Schedule 5 to the Buildings Ordinance Technical Notes for Guidance in Assessing the Effects of Civil Engineering Construction/Building Development on Railway Structures and Operations	(b) Differential movement resulting from the works shall not produce distortion in any railway structures/installations including the plinth or track in excess of 1 in 1 000 in any plane or a total movement in any railway structures/installations including the plinth or track exceeding 20 mm in any plane ;	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
25mm	<i>The Code of Practice on Design for Safety – External Maintenance</i>	2.4 Maintenance door	<p>2.4.1 Maintenance door shall be of size not less than 600 mm wide by 2000 mm high . It shall be locked to avoid misuse and prevent unauthorised access.</p> <p>It shall also bear on the conspicuous part of its outside face a warning notice in English and Chinese in letters and characters not less than 25 mm high as follows –</p> <p style="text-align: center;">DANGER UNAUTHORISED ACCESS PROHIBITED CLOSE AND LOCK THIS DOOR 危險 不得撞進 請關閉並緊鎖此門</p>	
30mm , 32mm , 40mm , 50mm AND 70mm	<i>Design Manual Barrier Free Access 2008</i>	Clause B18.4	<p>At each refuge floor, notices and signs should be provided in the following manner:</p> <p>(a) A sign indicating the required staircase number and a sign indicating the entrance to the refuge floor should be displayed inside each required staircase at a position immediately before entering the refuge floor at a height of 1500mm above the landing or the step immediately below the required staircase;</p> <p>(b) A notice in rectangular shape and in the following form should be displayed at a position immediately after entering the refuge floor from each required staircase at a height of 1500mm above the floor level ;</p> <p>(c) Sufficient directional signs in the following form should be displayed at appropriate positions at the refuge floor at a height of 1500mm above the floor level, to indicate the direction of travel in order to enter the respective required staircase ;</p> <p>(d) All signs and notices provided under (a), (b) and (c) should: -</p> <p>(i) be in English and Chinese;</p> <p>(ii) be illuminated by a light on two systems as the lighting referred to in Clause B5.5;</p> <p>(iii) have words and characters in block letters not less than 50mm high in white colour on a background in green or the words and characters in green on a background in white or black ; and</p> <p>(iv) not be easily defaced or damaged;</p> <p style="text-align: center;">REFUGE FLOOR 庇護層 For Temporary Rest During Emergency Escape 緊急逃生時供暫時歇息用 EXITS TO STREET LEVEL 往街道出口 staircase (no.) staircase (no.) ()號樓梯 ()號樓梯 STAIRCASE (No.) 樓梯</p> <p>(e) Appropriate notices in English and Chinese in words and characters not less than 25mm high should be provided in a conspicuous part at the main entrance of the building to indicate where the refuge floors are situated.</p>	

DATA	Related Regulations		Descriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
<p style="color: red; font-weight: bold;">30mm , 32mm , 40mm , 50mm AND 70mm</p>	Building (Construction) Regulations (Cap. 123 sub. leg. B)	Minimum cover of reinforcement	(1) Subject to Part XV, the thickness of the concrete cover to reinforcement (exclusive of plaster rendering or other applied covering or decorative finish) shall not be less than the size of that reinforcement or the dimension as specified in Table 11, whichever is the greater and the cover to the ends of bars shall not be less than 25 mm .	
		Dimension and Shape of Handrail	(1) Handrail to ramp and step shall be fixed not less than 30 mm and not more than 50 mm clear of wall and with a clear height of 70 mm from the top of the bracket to the top of the handrail. (2) The top of handrail shall be at a height of not less than 850 mm and not more than 950 mm above any nosing, floor or landing. (3)&(4) Handrail shall be: (i) tubular, not less than 32 mm and not greater than 50 mm in external diameter ; or (ii) in other shapes that can provide the user a grip similar to that specified in the case of tubular handrails. (5)&(6) Handrail shall extend horizontally not less than 300 mm beyond the first and last nosing of every flight of steps or beyond the ends of a ramp and terminate into a closed end which shall turn down or return fully to end post or wall face and which shall not project into a route of travel. Where a door opening is in place, a shortened extension of not less than 100 mm shall be permitted. Typical handrail sections are shown in Figure 15.	
	Design Manual Barrier Free Access 2008 (Cap. 123 sub. leg. F)	53. Grab Rails	There shall be at least two grab rails which shall not be less than 32 mm and not more than 40 mm in external diameter and shall be fixed on the wall leaving a grip space of not less than 30 mm clear of the mounting wall. The two grab rails constructed in one continuous piece is acceptable. The length of grab rail shall not be less than 600 mm. There shall be one grab rail fixed on each of both the inner and outer surfaces of the cubicle door; which shall not be less than 32 mm and not more than 40 mm in external diameter . The grab rail shall have a grip space of not less than 30 mm clear of each door surface. There shall be one folding grab rail on the wide side of the cubicle adjacent to the watercloset at a height between 725mm to 750mm above the finished floor level when lowered from the wall . Simple instructions in English, Chinese and Braille on how to unfold the rail should be affixed to the wall . The grab rail, folding grab rail and wash basin shall be capable of carrying a static load of 150 kg. The grab rail shall not rotate within its fixing fittings .	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
30mm , 32mm , 40mm , 50mm AND 70mm	Design Manual Barrier Free Access 2008 (Cap. 123 sub. leg. F)	77. Grab Rails for Bathtu	Grab rails shall: (i) not rotate within their fixing fittings ; (ii) have a diameter between 32 mm – 40 mm and have a grip space of not less than 30 mm clear from the wall ; (iii) be at least 900 mm long, installed horizontally or slanting at an angle not exceeding 20 degrees along the length of the bathtub and at a height between 150 mm to 300 mm above the rim of the bathtub ; and (iv) be at least 600 mm long, installed vertically at the plug end of the bathtub adjacent to the clear floor space with the lower end 150 mm to 300 mm above the rim of the bathtub .	
		78. Special Requirements for Accessible Lifts	(1)A lift shall have minimum internal car dimensions of 1200 mm x 1100 mm wide , with a minimum clear entrance width of 850 mm, and shall have handrails extending to within 150 mm of the corners at the rear and sides of the car. The top of the gripping surface of the handrails shall be at a height of 850 mm – 950 mm , with a space of 30 mm - 50 mm between the handrails and wall. (see Figure 40) (2) Where there are more than three lifts in a building, access shall be provided to every floor by at least one lift having minimum internal car dimensions of 1500 mm x 1400 mm (either wide or deep) with a minimum clear entrance width of 850 mm .	
	Building (Construction) Regulations	63. Core testing	(2) The nominal minimum size of the core shall be 150 mm diameter for 40 mm aggregate and 100 mm diameter for 20 mm aggregate or less, and the length of the test sample cut from the core shall be at least 95% of the core diameter .	
	Building (Planning) Regulations (Cap. 123 sub. leg. F)	Temporary Buildings 50. Definition of temporary buildings and short lived materials	(2) Short lived materials mean any building materials which are, in the absence of special care, liable to rapid deterioration or are otherwise unsuitable for use in the construction of permanent buildings— viii) cement plaster not exceeding 40 mm in thickness on wood or metal lath; (L.N. 294 of 1976)	
	APSEC Discussion Forum on 17 November 2017	Barrier Free Access – Level Difference between Arcade and Shop	BD advised that minor level difference not more than 50mm between the finished arcade floor and the unfinished shop floor during OP inspection could be accepted as a temporary situation , provided that the building owner undertakes that the shop would level with the adjoining arcade after completion of shop decoration works.	
		19. Protection and Surface	(4)&(5) No appliances, fixtures and fittings shall project beyond 90 mm from the surface of any wall below a level of 2000 mm above the ramp level unless they are unavoidable , in which case they shall also be extended downwards to the ramp level or be guided by tactile flooring materials	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
90mm	Design Manual Barrier Free Access 2008 (Cap. 123 sub. leg. F)	27. Avoidance of Projection	No appliances, fixtures or fittings shall project beyond 90 mm from the surface of any wall in a staircase below a level of 2000 mm above the treads of the staircase unless they are unavoidable, in which case they shall also be extended downwards to the level of the treads.	
		34. Protrusion	No appliances, fixtures and fittings shall project beyond 90 mm from the surface of any wall in corridors, paths and lobbies below a level of 2000 mm above the finished floor level unless they are unavoidable, in which case they shall also be extended downwards to the finished floor level or guided by tactile flooring materials.	
90mm	Code of Practice for Fire Safety in Buildings 2011	Subsection B5 – General Requirements of Exit Routes Clause B5.9	Every part of an exit route should have a clear headroom of not less than 2000mm, provided that sprinkler heads may be installed along the side wall of the exit route and every such sprinkler head should not project: (a) more than 90mm from such side wall ; and (b) so as to reduce the clear headroom of the exit route by more than 105mm.	
		Table B2	3. The width of a required staircase, staircase landing, passage or corridor comprising an exit route should be measured between the finished surfaces of the walls or of the inner sides of any balustrade and should not be decreased by the introduction of any projections other than handrails the projection of which should not exceed 90mm .	
		Clause B14.6	A handrail should be provided on each side of the required staircase. Every such handrail should: (a) be at a height not less than 850mm nor more than 1100mm; (b) not project so as to reduce the clear width of the required staircase by more than 90mm, for each handrail ; and (c) be continuous throughout each flight, but need not be carried round a landing or half landing except in the case of a premises of Use Classification 5a.	
		Subsection D18 – Construction of Access Staircase in a Firefighting and Rescue Stairway Clause D18.1	(d) be provided with handrails on each side of the staircase at a height of not less than 850mm and not more than 1100mm above the steps or landings. The handrails should not project so as to reduce the clear width of the staircase by more than 90mm for each handrail and should be continuous throughout each flight of the staircase but need not be carried round a landing or half landing.	

DATA	Related Requisitions		Decriptions	Remarks																					
	Manuals	Page/Table																							
90mm	Practice Note for Authorized Persons, APP-2	Calculation of Gross Floor Area and Non-accountable Gross Floor Area Building (Planning) Regulation 23(3)(a) and (b)	9. Under regulation 37 of the B(C)R, cladding means a facing or architectural decoration additional to the external walls of any building. External wall finishes of nominal thickness or claddings with overall thickness of not more than 90mm (75mm in the case of cladding to non-structural prefabricated external walls) as the external wall finishes may be disregarded for the purpose of measurement of dimensions under regulation 23(3) of B(P)R. However, no part of any wall finishes, including claddings, should project beyond the site boundaries. For the refurbishment of buildings, application for exemption from section 31(1) of the BO is required if the claddings will project over streets.																						
	Practice Note for Authorized Persons, APP-4	Flushing Supply 4. The quantity of flushing water required should be assessed in accordance with the following standards :	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>User</th> <th>Unit</th> <th>Average Demand</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Domestic buildings</td> <td>per number of required soil fitment per day</td> <td>450 litres</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Offices, factories, department stores, shops, public buildings and other non-domestic buildings of a like nature</td> <td>per number of required soil fitment per day</td> <td>450 litres</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Restaurants</td> <td>per seat per day</td> <td>13.5 litres</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Cinemas</td> <td>per seat per day</td> <td>4.5 litres</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Schools</td> <td>per head per day</td> <td>18 litres</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Hotels and boarding houses</td> <td>per room per day</td> <td>90 litres</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	User	Unit	Average Demand	Domestic buildings	per number of required soil fitment per day	450 litres	Offices, factories, department stores, shops, public buildings and other non-domestic buildings of a like nature	per number of required soil fitment per day	450 litres	Restaurants	per seat per day	13.5 litres	Cinemas	per seat per day	4.5 litres	Schools	per head per day	18 litres	Hotels and boarding houses	per room per day	90 litres	
	User	Unit	Average Demand																						
	Domestic buildings	per number of required soil fitment per day	450 litres																						
	Offices, factories, department stores, shops, public buildings and other non-domestic buildings of a like nature	per number of required soil fitment per day	450 litres																						
Restaurants	per seat per day	13.5 litres																							
Cinemas	per seat per day	4.5 litres																							
Schools	per head per day	18 litres																							
Hotels and boarding houses	per room per day	90 litres																							
APSEC Discussion Forum on 2 August 2013	Cladding	The BD responded that it had been proposed in the draft revised PNAP APP-2 that the cladding with overall thickness of not more than 90mm (75mm for cladding to non-structural prefabricated external wall) could be disregarded for GFA and SC calculations. This approach was applicable to balconies and utility platforms.																							
APSEC Discussion Forum on 9 January 2015	Architectural Features at Cladding	The BD confirmed that architectural features projecting not more than 500mm from the external wall of a building with acceptable extent might be incorporated in curtain wall or external cladding design. For architectural features with projections exceeding 500mm, only the exceeding portion should be included in the GFA calculations.																							
APSEC Discussion Forum on 15 January 2016	GFA issue - Curtain Wall of Existing Buildings	BD confirmed that similar principle could apply. The area of 250mm thick curtain wall could be excluded from GFA , provided that requirements under PNAP APP-2 on curtain wall were met. The area of the curtain wall exceeding 250mm thick should be accountable for GFA.																							

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
	<p>APSEC Discussion Forum on 22 November 2019</p>	<p>PNAP APP-152 - Building Setback (i) Is the 3m column separation refer to structural dimension and that cladding finish (90mm thick) for such column can exist within the 3m separation?</p>	<p>BD confirmed that <i>the dimension for the setback and column separation should be measured from the finished surface.</i></p>	
100mm	<p>APSEC Discussion Forum on 10 Nov 2014</p>	<p>FS Code Clause C13.4(c)</p>	<p>The BD noted that a 100mm thick wall constructed of solid brick of clay or concrete should have a FRR of 60 minutes . Hence, additional fire rated boards might not be required at isolated locations with MINOR building services fixtures where the wall thickness would be reduced .</p>	
	<p>APSEC Discussion Forum on 12 August 2016 PNAP APP-130 Acoustic Window at Curtain Wall</p>	<p>QUESTION : When PNAP APP-130 type acoustic window is provided, the required thickness of the window is usually about at least 250mm, accommodating 175mm wide air gap and double frames. In the case of prefabricated façade, only 150mm thickness of the façade can be exempted from GFA calculation. The GFA issue for the remaining 100mm thickness necessary to accommodate the acoustic window has caused uncertainties, in particular when the criteria of projecting</p>	<p>BD was concerned about the further impact on building bulk and did not agree. [Post meeting note: In the revised PNAP APP-130 issued on 23.12.2016, the ventilation performance of the 100-175mm gap between the window and the inner noise screen need not be assessed thus providing flexibility to the industry in designing the overall thickness of acoustic windows.]</p>	

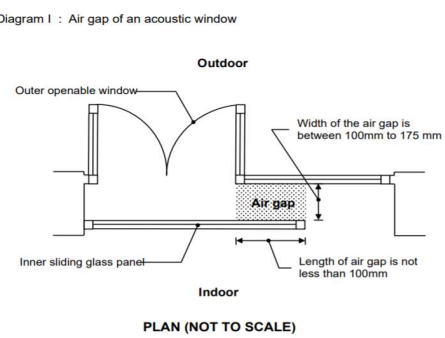
DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
100mm		<p><i>APP-19 cannot be met or can only be met with huge difficulties. Similar problem occurs with curtain wall, except that there is no alternative with the 'projecting window' approach. We suggest that BD should allow the additional 100mm thickness at acoustic window at prefabricated façade to be exempted from GFA calculation without having to meet the projecting window criteria under PNAP APP-19. Similarly the additional 50mm thick at curtain wall where acoustic windows are located shall be allowed to be disregarded for the purpose of PR / SC.</i></p>		
	<p>APSEC Discussion Forum on 13 January 2017</p>	<p>Questions : <i>Non-accountable GFA – PNAP APP-2 para 12 We wish BD to clarify whether external wall enclosing areas of non-accountable GFA would also be disregarded in GFA calculation.</i></p>	<p>BD confirmed that external wall enclosing non-accountable GFA area <i>could be disregarded from GFA calculation</i> , provided that such wall was a non-load bearing wall. The maximum wall thickness to be disregarded from GFA calculation <i>should normally not be greater than 100mm.</i></p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
100mm	APSEC Discussion Form 00 10	Questions : Provision of Reduced Size Light Well to Enhance Natural Ventilation (Item raised by BD) BD shared with	<p>BD advised that <i>CFD analysis</i> indicated that <i>ventilation performance of reduced size light well (1:18) with bottom opened would be generally better than the standard size light well (1:6)</i> .</p> <p>In order to allow more design flexibility, <i>BA would give favorable consideration to disregard the reduced size light well from GFA calculation if openable window facing the reduced size light well was provided as enhancement for internal toilet and the following criteria were met:</i></p> <p>(i) <i>The light well should be vertically uncovered and unobstructed ;</i></p> <p>(ii) <i>Any horizontal dimension would be not less than 1.5m ;</i></p> <p>(iii) <i>The horizontal area of light well would be not less than 1m2 for every 18m of the mean height of the walls enclosing the light well ;</i></p> <p>(iv) <i>An opening not less than the size of top opening and having a minimum dimension of 1.5m should be provided at the bottom of the light well for providing ventilation through draught effect;</i></p> <p>(v) <i>Other than maximum 100mm projecting window heads/sills ,</i> <i>no projection or unenclosed pipeworks would be installed insidethe light well ;</i></p> <p>(vi) <i>The openable windows into the light well should have 1/10 of the floor area of the toilet/bathroom ;</i></p> <p>(vii) <i>There should be no exhaust outlet (other than exhaust from the relevant toilet/ bathroom) / flue aperture / other pollutant discharging into the light well. No fresh air intake for mechanical ventilation should be drawn from the reduced size light well;</i> and</p> <p>(viii) <i>The light well should be designated as common part in the DMC</i></p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
	<i>Forum on 19 January 2018</i>	<i>members on the findings of a recent study on the ventilation performance of reduced size light well.</i>	<p>which should specify that <i>no combustible material should be installed inside the light well</i> . Such DMC should contain binding and enforceable conditions for the control, management and maintenance of the light well. Where no DMC would be in force for a development, such designation should be incorporated into the Sales and Purchase Agreement, Assignment, Tenancy Agreement or conveyancing document such that the future owners or tenants would be aware of their rights and liabilities. Moreover, BD drew members' attention to the following points:(i) <i>The accepted reduced size light well should not be construed as fulfilling the open air requirements.</i></p> <p>(ii) <i>Windows facing into such reduced size light well should not be included in the aggregate window areas for the purpose of B(P)R 36(2). Should application for modification of B(P)R 36 being required, the criteria and requirements in the PNAP APP-98 (for toilets and/or bathrooms in domestic buildings) or PNAP ADM-2 (for toilets and/or bathrooms in non-domestic or hotel premises) should still be complied with.</i></p> <p>As a start, each case would be referred to BC for consideration on case merits to gain experience and gauge feedback on the matter.</p>	
	<i>Practice Note for Authorized Persons, APP-2</i>	Calculation of Gross Floor Area and Non-accountable Gross Floor Area Building (Planning) Regulation 23(3)(a) and (b)	<p><i>Non-accountable Gross Floor Area</i></p> <p><i>12. For plant rooms and other features that are to be disregarded from GFA calculation , the enclosing walls and the associated protected lobby, if any, solely serving the said rooms or features and do not serve any other function, may also be disregarded from GFA calculation . The maximum thickness of such wall to be disregarded from GFA calculation should normally be not greater than 100mm.</i></p>	

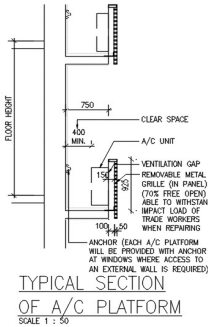
DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
100mm	Practice Note for Authorized Persons, APP-19	<p>Projections in relation to Site Coverage and Plot Ratio Building (Planning) Regulations 20 & 21</p> <p>Minor projecting features</p>	<p>3. It follows from the above that the following projections from the face of a building, having no significant impact on building bulk, need not be counted for SC and PR:</p> <p>(a) pitched roof eaves and flat roof overhangs complying with the projection and clear height limits in regulation 7(1) of the B(P)R (provided they are not contained within parapet walls as part of an accessible flat roof);</p> <p>(b) individual air-conditioner boxes and platforms of reasonable size and projecting not more than 750 mm, which have a built-in system for condensate disposal;</p> <p>(c) air-conditioner platforms complying with Appendices B and C of Code of Practice on Design for Safety – External Maintenance;</p> <p>(d) individual projections / window hoods complying with B(P)R and porches having projection not exceeding 2 m;</p> <p>(e) window cills and window surrounds projecting not more than 100 mm;</p> <p>(f) string courses, fins and architectural mouldings complying with the projection and clear height limits in regulation 7(1) of the B(P)R (but not structural beams and columns);</p> <p>(g) window flower boxes projecting not more than 500 mm and complying with the design requirements as illustrated in the sketch in Appendix A;</p> <p>(h) external drainage pipes and gutters complying with the projection and clear height limits in regulation 7(2) of the B(P)R;</p> <p>(i) sunshades solely used for the purpose of energy conservation projecting not more than 1.5m from the external wall complying with the criteria set out in Practice Note for Authorized Persons, Registered Structural Engineers and Registered Geotechnical Engineers (PNAP) APP-67 and PNAP APP-156;</p> <p>(j) reflectors projecting not more than 1.5 m from the external walls, subject to submission of quantitative assessment of environmental benefits to the Building Authority for consideration in case they project over 0.5 m from the external walls;</p> <p>(k) canopies projecting not more than 2 m over an entrance to a building;</p> <p>(l) drying racks and supporting frames for light fittings, antennas or transceivers for public telecommunications services complying with the projection and clear height limits in regulation 7(3) of the B(P)R;</p> <p>(m) retractable awnings for external wall openings complying with the projection and clear height limits in regulation 7(4) of the B(P)R and applicable positional, projection and clear height requirements under minor works item 2.43 in Schedule 1 of the Building (Minor Works) Regulation; and</p> <p>(n) metal supporting frames for growing of plants</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
100mm	Practice Note for Authorized Persons, APP-19	Projecting windows	<p>5. It follows from the above that all other projections must be included in SC and PR calculations. However projecting windows will not be regarded as GFA and will be accepted as not counting for SC and PR, if they satisfy all the following criteria within the storey from which they project:</p> <p>(a) the projecting window is from living room, dining room or bedroom of domestic accommodation only;</p> <p>(b) only one such projecting window is allowed per room and it should be located on one external wall only;</p> <p>(c) the elevational area¹ of the projecting window does not exceed 50% of the area₁ of the external wall where the projecting window is located;</p> <p>(d) the extent of the projection is not more than 100 mm from the outer face of the main external wall;</p> <p>(e) the base is not less than 500 mm above finished floor level;</p> <p>(f) the window complies fully with regulation 3A of the B(P)R. For the purposes of this requirement, the height of 1 100 mm protective barrier will be measured from floor level and any part of the window within this dimension should be fixed or otherwise suitably protected in line with paragraph (2) of the said Regulation; and</p> <p>(g) the projecting windows will not form a piecemeal addition to existing buildings.</p>	
100mm	Practice Note for Authorized Persons, APP-110	Protective Barriers	<p>2. In all circumstances, a barrier should have a height of not less than 1.1m. The lowest 150mm of the barrier should be built solid (except for staircases enclosed with walls and without open stair-well¹). Any gap or opening in the barrier should be so constructed as to inhibit the passage of particles more than 100mm in its smallest dimension.</p>	<p>1 Practice Note for Authorized Persons, Registered Structural Engineers and Registered Geotechnical Engineer APP-119 is relevant.</p>

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
	<i>Practice Note for Authorized Persons, APP-130</i>	6. Acoustic Windows	<p>6.1 For a primary or secondary opening with an acoustic “double glazing” window¹ comprising an outer openable window and an inner sliding glass panel designed for the dual purposes of natural ventilation under the B(P)Rs and noise reduction as shown in Diagrams H and I, the resultant opening after aligning the inner sliding glass panel with the outer openable window will be taken as its openable window area for the purposes of regulations 30 and 31 of the B(P)Rs and Part III of this Appendix.</p> <p>Diagram I : Air gap of an acoustic window</p> 	<p>1 This type of window has an inner sliding glass panel behind an outer window, both readily openable, for creating an air gap for the supply of fresh air with noise mitigation effect. For optimum performance, the air gap should</p>
100mm	<i>Building (Planning) Regulations (Cap. 123 sub.</i>	19. Protection and surface	<p>(1) Any ramp—</p> <p>(a) with a rise greater than 200 mm; and</p> <p>(b) leading down towards an area where there may be vehicular traffic, shall have a railing or barrier at a distance of not less than 1 500 mm from the foot of the ramp across the full width of the lower end of the ramp.</p> <p>(2) On the surface of a ramp, raised traction strips shall be avoided.</p> <p>(3) A kerb of not less than 100 mm in height, or a rail 200 mm above ramp level, shall be provided on both sides to prevent a wheelchair from slipping over the edge.</p> <p>(4) There shall be no appliances, fixtures or fittings projecting beyond 90 mm from the surface of any wall adjacent to a ramp below a level of 2 000 mm above the ramp level unless such appliances, fixtures or fittings are unavoidable on reasonable ground.</p> <p>(5) Appliances, fixtures and fittings that are unavoidable on reasonable ground shall be—</p> <p>(a) extended downwards to the ramp level; or</p> <p>(b) guided by tactile flooring materials.</p> <p>(6) The floor and wall along ramps shall be in contrasting colours.</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
	<i>leg. F)</i>	28. Dimension and shape of handrail	<p>(1) A handrail to ramps and steps shall be fixed not less than 30 mm and not more than 50 mm clear of wall and with a clear height of 70 mm from the top of the bracket to the top of the handrail.</p> <p>(2) The top of a handrail shall be at a height of not less than 850 mm and not more than 950 mm above any nosing, floor or landing .</p> <p>(3) A handrail shall be—</p> <p>(a) tubular; or</p> <p>(b) in any other shapes that can provide the user a grip similar to that provided by a tubular handrail.</p> <p>(4) The external diameter of a handrail shall be not less than 32 mm and not more than 50 mm .</p> <p>(5) A handrail shall—</p> <p>(a) extend horizontally not less than 300 mm beyond the first and last nosing of every flight of staircase or beyond the ends of a ramp ; and</p> <p>(b) terminate into a closed end, which shall turn down or return fully to end post or wall face and which shall not project into a route of travel.</p> <p>(6) Notwithstanding subsection (5)(a), where a door opening is in place, the horizontal extension may be shortened to not less than 100 mm .</p>	
	Building (Construction) Regulations (Cap. 123 sub. leg. B)	38. External wall of buildings	<p>Every external wall of a buildin g shall be constructed of—</p> <p>(a) masonry not less than 225 mm thick ;</p> <p>(b) plain concrete or reinforced concrete not less than 100 mm thick ;</p> <p>(c) any of the materials mentioned in paragraph (a) or (b) in combination with a framework of steel or reinforced concrete; or</p> <p>(d) other suitable materials of permanent, non-combustible and impervious construction .</p>	
		63. Core testing	<p>(1) When concrete is considered from visual inspection to be suspect or when the specified grade strength has been deemed not to be attained under regulation 59 the compressive strength of the concrete in the structure may be determined by drilling a sufficient number of cores from the concrete at suitable locations.</p> <p>(2) The nominal minimum size of the core shall be 150 mm diameter for 40 mm aggregate and 100 mm diameter for 20 mm aggregate or less , and the length of the test sample cut from the core shall be at least 95% of the core diameter.</p> <p>(3) Cores drilled from concrete shall be prepared and tested by a recognized method to determine compressive strength.</p> <p>(4) No adjustment shall be made to the measured strength in respect of the age of the core when tested.</p>	

DATA	Related Requisitions		Descriptions	Remarks																																														
	Manuals	Page/Table																																																
100mm	Building (Refuse Storage and Material Recovery Chambers and Refuse Chutes) Regulations (Cap. 123 sub. leg. H)	9. Construction of refuse storage and material recovery chambers	<p>(1) Every refuse storage and material recovery chamber shall be constructed of brickwork, concrete or other approved material.</p> <p>(2) The whole of the internal faces of the walls of every refuse storage and material recovery chamber shall be lined with glazed bricks, glazed tiles or other approved material.</p> <p>(3) The ceiling of every refuse storage and material recovery chamber shall be rendered in cement and finished with a smooth surface .</p> <p>(4) The floor of every refuse storage and material recovery chamber shall be—</p> <p>(a) constructed of concrete not less than 100 mm thick ; (L.N. 439 of 1990)</p> <p>(b) laid to fall towards the gully provided in accordance with regulation 11; and</p> <p>(c) finished with quarry tiles or other approved hard impervious material.</p> <p>(5) In every refuse storage and material recovery chamber the junction of the floor with the walls shall be coved.</p>																																															
		11. Drainage of refuse storage and material recovery chambers	<p>(1) Every refuse storage and material recovery chamber shall be provided, in the floor thereof, with an outlet drain.</p> <p>(2) Every such drain shall be— (a) provided with a grating; and (b) connected, by means of a pipe having an internal diameter of not less than 100 mm, to a back inlet trapped gully.</p> <p>(3) Every such gully shall be—</p> <p>(a) situated in a position immediately outside the refuse storage and material recovery chamber;</p> <p>(b) fitted with an airtight cover to provide access to the gully for inspection and cleaning; and</p> <p>(c) connected to a drain provided for the carriage of foul water.</p>																																															
		17. Walls of refuse chute	<p>The walls of every refuse chute shall be constructed of solid brick or concrete , and shall be not less than 100 mm thick , exclusive of any lining.</p>																																															
Code of Practice for Fire Safety in Buildings 2011	TABLE E2 WALLS CONSTRUCTED WHOLLY OF NON-COMBUSTIBLE MATERIALS	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th rowspan="2">Construction and Materials</th> <th colspan="3">Minimum thickness in mm (excluding plaster) for FRR of</th> </tr> <tr> <th>240 mins</th> <th>120 mins</th> <th>60 mins</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td colspan="4">SOLID CONSTRUCTION</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Solid bricks of clay, concrete or sand lime without plaster</td> <td>225</td> <td>225*</td> <td>100</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="4">Reinforced concrete -</td> </tr> <tr> <td>(a) containing not less than 1 per cent of vertical reinforcement</td> <td>180</td> <td>100</td> <td>75</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Concrete cover to main reinforcement</td> <td>25</td> <td>25</td> <td>15</td> </tr> <tr> <td>(b) containing less than 1 per cent of vertical reinforcement</td> <td>240</td> <td>160</td> <td>120</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Concrete cover to main reinforcement</td> <td>25</td> <td>25</td> <td>25</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="4">HOLLOW BLOCK CONSTRUCTION</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Clay blocks (outer web not less than 13mm thick) of 2 cells not less than 50 per cent solid finished with 13mm gypsum plaster on each side</td> <td></td> <td>100</td> <td>100</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Concrete blocks of one cell in wall thickness not less than 50 per cent solid finished with 13mm gypsum plaster on each side</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>190</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Construction and Materials	Minimum thickness in mm (excluding plaster) for FRR of			240 mins	120 mins	60 mins	SOLID CONSTRUCTION				Solid bricks of clay, concrete or sand lime without plaster	225	225*	100	Reinforced concrete -				(a) containing not less than 1 per cent of vertical reinforcement	180	100	75	Concrete cover to main reinforcement	25	25	15	(b) containing less than 1 per cent of vertical reinforcement	240	160	120	Concrete cover to main reinforcement	25	25	25	HOLLOW BLOCK CONSTRUCTION				Clay blocks (outer web not less than 13mm thick) of 2 cells not less than 50 per cent solid finished with 13mm gypsum plaster on each side		100	100	Concrete blocks of one cell in wall thickness not less than 50 per cent solid finished with 13mm gypsum plaster on each side			190	<p>* Where finished with 13mm gypsum plaster on each side, the thickness may be reduced to 100mm .</p>
Construction and Materials	Minimum thickness in mm (excluding plaster) for FRR of																																																	
	240 mins	120 mins	60 mins																																															
SOLID CONSTRUCTION																																																		
Solid bricks of clay, concrete or sand lime without plaster	225	225*	100																																															
Reinforced concrete -																																																		
(a) containing not less than 1 per cent of vertical reinforcement	180	100	75																																															
Concrete cover to main reinforcement	25	25	15																																															
(b) containing less than 1 per cent of vertical reinforcement	240	160	120																																															
Concrete cover to main reinforcement	25	25	25																																															
HOLLOW BLOCK CONSTRUCTION																																																		
Clay blocks (outer web not less than 13mm thick) of 2 cells not less than 50 per cent solid finished with 13mm gypsum plaster on each side		100	100																																															
Concrete blocks of one cell in wall thickness not less than 50 per cent solid finished with 13mm gypsum plaster on each side			190																																															

DATA	Related Requisitions		Descriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
100mm		<p>TABLE E4 FLOORS AND LANDINGS</p> <p>TABLE E6 REINFORCED CONCRETE COLUMNS AND BEAMS</p> <p>TABLE E7 STAIRS</p>	<p>* Reinforcement consisting of expanded metal lath or a wire fabric not lighter than 0.5kg/m² with 2mm diameter wire at not more than 100mm centres or a continuous arrangement of links at not more than 200mm centres should be incorporated in the concrete cover at a distance not exceeding 20mm from the face.</p>	
	<p><i>The Code of Practice on Design for Safety – External Maintenance</i></p>	<p><u>Configuration of AC Platform</u></p>	<p>2. The size of the platform and the AC to be installed thereon shall be indicated on general building plans for assuring adequate working spaces provided for the M&R works for the AC. The optimum size of the platform is as follows:</p> <p>(a) Projection and Width The maximum projection of AC platform may be up to 900 mm disregarding the thickness of the protective barrier/ guard-rail/ screen including its supporting structural members. The portion of the platform projecting more than 750 mm shall be of perforated design (perforation of not less than 70% and with 6mm maximum dimension) so as to minimise the adverse effect on building bulk, lighting and ventilation. Width of the platform shall be restricted to housing the AC and providing working space for paragraphs 2(b) and 3 below, but not serving as catwalks.</p> <p>(b) Working Space The length and depth of the working space, either in front or at the back of the AC, should be not less than the length of the AC and 400 mm respectively. The length of the working space on one side of the AC should be not less than 400 mm which may be increased to a maximum of 500 mm if it also serves as the worker's landing through windows. Subject to the provision of screens at paragraph 5 or guard-rails at paragraph 6 below; and the provision of cast-in anchors at paragraph 6 below having been met, the working space in front or at the back of the AC may also serve as a maintenance passage to other AC and/or services and utilities provided in accordance with paragraph 3 below as appropriate. Minor encroachment onto the working space (e.g. supporting frame of the stacked up AC under paragraph 2(d) below, etc.) may be accepted.</p>	
100mm	<p><i>The Code of Practice on Design for Safety – External Maintenance</i></p>	 <p>TYPICAL SECTION OF A/C PLATFORM SCALE 1 : 50</p>		

DATA	Related Requisitions		Descriptions	Remarks									
	Manuals	Page/Table											
			<p>(c) Ventilation Gap A minimum gap of 100 mm between the AC and the outer edge of the platform (or inner side of screen if exists) or the external wall shall be provided.</p> <p>(d) Heights of AC and Screen To minimise the extent of the platforms, those with access in/ from the units can be designed for stacking up of two ACs but the height of the screen, if any, shall be not more than 1.6 m. If one layer of AC is provided, the height of the screen shall be not less than 0.9 m and not more than 1.1 m.</p>										
		<p>TYPICAL DETAIL PLAN 1 OF A/C PLATFORM SCALE 1 : 50</p>											
		A. Protection of opening	<p>(1) Every opening placed on an external wall above the ground floor of any building shall be protected by a barrier which shall be not less than 1 100 mm high and the lowermost 150 mm of such barrier shall be built solid.</p> <p>(2) A barrier provided under paragraph (1) shall be so designed as to minimize the risk of persons or objects falling, rolling, sliding or slipping through gaps in the barrier, or persons climbing over the barrier.</p>										
150mm	Building (Planning) Regulations (Cap. 123 sub. leg. F)	25. Space about domestic buildings	<p>(1) (a) Every domestic building on a class A or B site or on a class C site shall have within the site an open space at the rear, or partly at the rear and partly at the side, at a level of not less than 150 mm below the floor of the lowermost storey in accordance with the provision of more open space than that specified in the Second Schedule. (G.N.A. 97 of 1962; L.N. 82 of 1963)</p> <p>(b) The open space provided pursuant to subparagraph (a) shall be such that no part of the building which bounds on such open space at any level shall be within 1.5 m, measured horizontally, of a line drawn vertically from a point in the boundary of the open space immediately opposite thereto. (L.N. 33 of 1966) Second Schedule: Provided that where the Building Authority considers it necessary for proper and equitable development or redevelopment of an adjacent site, he may require the</p>										
		17. Running slope and length	<p>No ramp shall be steeper than 1 in 12 gradient except a single minor rise that conforms to the measurements set out in the table below.</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Table</p> <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <thead> <tr> <th>Maximum slope</th> <th>Maximum Length</th> <th>Maximum rise</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1:10 i.e., 10%</td> <td>1 500 mm</td> <td>150 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1:8 i.e., 12.5%</td> <td>600 mm</td> <td>75 mm</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Maximum slope	Maximum Length	Maximum rise	1:10 i.e., 10%	1 500 mm	150 mm	1:8 i.e., 12.5%	600 mm	75 mm	
Maximum slope	Maximum Length	Maximum rise											
1:10 i.e., 10%	1 500 mm	150 mm											
1:8 i.e., 12.5%	600 mm	75 mm											

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
150mm	Building (Planning) Regulations (Cap. 123 sub. leg. F)	57. Grab rails for bathtub	<p>(1) A grab rail shall be fixed on the wall along the length of abathtub in an accessible bathroom.</p> <p>(2) A grab rail shall be—</p> <p>(a) not less than 900 mm in length ;</p> <p>(b) fixed horizontally or slanting at an angle not exceeding 20o ; and</p> <p>(c) at a height of not less than 150 mm and not more than 300 mm above the rim of the bathtub.</p> <p>(3) A vertical grab rail of not less than 600 mm in length shall be fixed on the wall at the plug end of the bathtub adjacent to the clear floor space referred to in section 56(1).</p> <p>(4) The lower end of a vertical grab rail r referred to in subsection (3) shall be not less than 150 mm and not more than 300 mm above the rim of the bathtub.</p> <p>(5)A grab rail referred to in subsection (1) or (3) shall— (a) have an external diameter of not less than 32 mm and not more than 40 mm; (b) be so fixed that a grip space of not less than 30 mm clear of the wall is left; and (c) not be fitted in a manner that allows it to rotate within its fixing fittings.</p>	
		78. Special requirements for accessible lifts	<p>(1) Subject to subsection (2), every floor of a building shall be accessible by at least one passenger lift which—</p> <p>(a) has internal car dimensions of not less than 1 100 mm in width and not less than 1 200 mm in depth;</p> <p>(b) has a clear entrance of not less than 850 mm in width; and</p> <p>(c) is fitted with handrails—</p> <p>(i) which extends to within 150 mm of the corners at the rear and sides of the car; Last</p> <p>(ii) the top of the gripping surface of which is at a height of not less than 850 mm and not more than 950 mm above the finished floor level; and</p> <p>(iii) which is so fitted that a space of not less than 30 mm and not more than 50 mm is left between the handrails and wall.</p> <p>(2) Where there are more than 3 lifts in a building, access shall be provided to every floor by at least one lift which—</p> <p>(a) has internal car dimensions of not less than 1 500 mm × 1 400 mm (in either width or depth); and</p> <p>(b) has a clear entrance of not less than 850 mm in width.</p>	

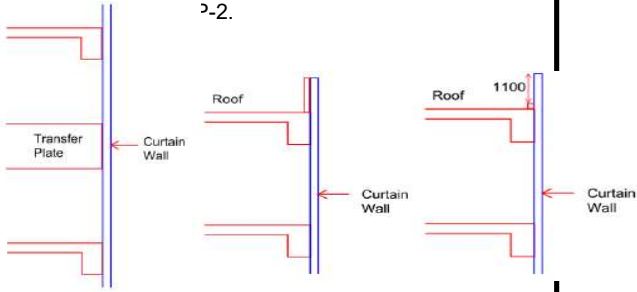
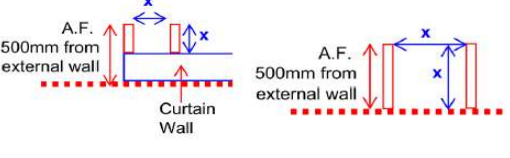
DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
150mm	Building (Construction) Regulations (Cap. 123 sub. leg. B)	8. Changes in level	<p>(1) At the outer edge of all balconies, verandahs, staircases, landings or projections, or where there is a difference in adjacent levels greater than 600 mm , protective barriers shall be provided to restrict or control the movement of persons and vehicles.</p> <p>(2) Protective barriers provided under this regulation to restrict or control the movement of persons shall be—</p> <p>(a) designed and constructed to minimize the risk of persons or objects falling, rolling, sliding or slipping through gaps in the barrier, or persons climbing over the barrier;</p> <p>(b) at a height above the higher of the adjacent levels of not less than 1.1 m; and</p> <p>(c) constructed as to inhibit the passage of articles more than 100 mm in their smallest dimension .</p> <p>(3) At the outer edge of all balconies, verandahs, floors, accessible roofs, or similar areas , the lowermost 150 mm of the protective barrier shall be built solid, but this subregulation shall not apply to roofs where no access is provided to the roof other than such access as may be necessary for maintenance work.</p>	
		35. Floor next above external ground level	<p>The level of the floor next above the external ground of every building shall be not less than 150 mm above the level of the external ground or paving at the entrance to that floor.</p>	
		49. Flat roof	<p>(1) A flat roof adjoining any building shall be at a level of not less than 150 mm below any adjoining usable floor space.</p> <p>(2) Access for maintenance shall be provided to every flat roof.</p>	
	Building (Refuse Storage and Material Recovery Chambers and Refuse Chutes) Regulations (Cap. 123 sub. leg. H)	23. Construction of hopper	<p>(1) The mouth of every hopper shall have a clear opening having dimensions not less than 250 x 150 mm and not more than 350 x 250 mm.</p> <p>(2) Every hopper shall be so constructed—</p> <p>(a) that it will remain only in a completely closed or completely open position and will not open of its own accord; and</p> <p>(b) as to prevent the escape of dust or fumes both when it is closed and when it is open.</p> <p>(3) Every hopper and frame shall be so constructed as to prevent refuse becoming lodged therein.</p> <p>(4) Every hopper and frame shall be constructed of galvanized or stainless mild steel plate, of not less than 3 mm thickness , or other approved material.</p> <p>(5) The inner plate of every hopper shall project downward at an angle of not less than 45 to the horizontal when the</p>	

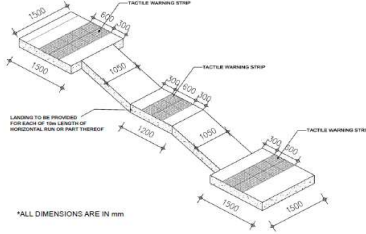
DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks															
	Manuals	Page/Table																	
150mm	<i>Design Manual Barrier Free Access 2008</i>	<i>B. Recommended Design Requirements</i>	<p>(a) A ramp should have a running slope 1:12 (8.33%) to 1:20 (5%).</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Maximum slope</th> <th>Maximum length</th> <th>Maximum rise</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1:20 i.e., 5.00%</td> <td>10000 mm</td> <td>500 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1:16 i.e., 6.25%</td> <td>6400 mm</td> <td>400 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1:14 i.e., 7.14%</td> <td>4200 mm</td> <td>300 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1:12 i.e., 8.33%</td> <td>1800 mm</td> <td>150 mm</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>(b) Width should be at least 1200 mm to enable a wheelchair to turn or preferably at least 1500 mm to allow 2 wheelchairs to pass.</p> <p>(c) A ramp should have slip-resistant surface with a minimum “static coefficient of friction” of “Very Good” grading (see Appendix C).</p> <p>(d) Tactile warning strips at the head, foot and landing should have a minimum luminous contrast of 70% with the adjoining surfaces.</p> <p>(e) The floor and wall along a ramp should have a minimum luminous contrast of 30%</p>	Maximum slope	Maximum length	Maximum rise	1:20 i.e., 5.00%	10000 mm	500 mm	1:16 i.e., 6.25%	6400 mm	400 mm	1:14 i.e., 7.14%	4200 mm	300 mm	1:12 i.e., 8.33%	1800 mm	150 mm	
	Maximum slope	Maximum length	Maximum rise																
1:20 i.e., 5.00%	10000 mm	500 mm																	
1:16 i.e., 6.25%	6400 mm	400 mm																	
1:14 i.e., 7.14%	4200 mm	300 mm																	
1:12 i.e., 8.33%	1800 mm	150 mm																	
	<i>Code of Practice for Fire Safety in</i>	<i>Subsection B14 – Construction of Required Staircases</i>	<p>Clause B14.2 Required staircases should be arranged in straight flights without winders , each flight should consist of not more than 16 risers nor less than 2 risers. Treads should be not less than 225mm wide, measured clear of nosings and risers should be not more than 175mm high . Provided that:- (a) the treads in Use Classification 5a should be not less than 280mm wide and the risers should be not more than 150mm high ; and (b) the treads in Use Classification 5b should be not less than 250mm wide and the risers should be not more than 150mm nor less than 75mm high.</p>																

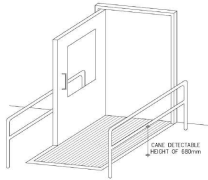
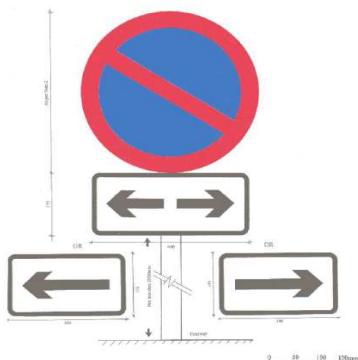
DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
150mm	<i>Buildings 2011</i>	<i>Subsection B23 - Required Staircases</i>	<p>Classification 5a Clauses B23.1 All required staircases in this Section should comply with the following requirements: (a) The required staircase have no winders ; (b) Each flight is of not more than 16 or of less than 3 steps ; (c) The required staircase should not have more than 2 successive flights without a turn ; (d) There should be a turn between 2 successive flights if any one of them has more than 12 steps in a flight ; and (e) Treads should be not less than 280mm wide and risers should be not more than 150mm high.</p>	
	<i>Practice Note for Authorized Persons, APP-105</i>	<i>Water Seepage Appendix A (PNAP APP-105)</i>	<p>1. In general, embedment of water-borne pipes in structural members, other than those specified in paragraph 2, would not be permitted within columns, slabs, structural walls, beams, transfer plates, pile caps and footings. 2. Water-borne pipes piercing through the following structural members may be permitted where it is demonstrated that no adverse effect will be caused to the performance of the structural members and, where the pipes are easily accessible for maintenance : (a) Vertical pipes piercing through structural slabs, transfer plates; and (b) Horizontal pipes piercing through beams, columns or structural walls. In this regard, for the sake of easy replacement, pipe sleeves should preferably be cast into the structural elements for the pipes to pass through. 3. In the context of para. 2, no adverse effect may be assumed in the following circumstances : (a) Vertical pipes piercing through r.c. floor slabs, transfer plates :- (i) The size of a hole formed is not greater than 150mm in diameter or the minimum bar spacing of the slab in either direction, whichever is the less and no main reinforcement is severed to make way for the hole ; and (ii) Trimming bars not less than the size of the main reinforcement of the slab are provided around the hole . (b) Horizontal pipes piercing through r.c. beams :- (i) The size of a hole formed is not greater than 150mm in diameter or 1/3 the depth of the beam, whichever is the less ; (ii) The hole is formed at the neutral axis of the beam section; (iii) Vertical and horizontal trimming bars not less than 16mm in diameter are provided around the hole and at each side of the beam ; and</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
			<p>(iv) <i>No shear reinforcement is severed to make way for the hole.</i></p> <p>- 1 - (c) <i>Horizontal pipes piercing through structural walls :-</i></p> <p>(i) <i>The size of a hole formed is not greater than 150mm in diameter or the minimum bar spacing of the vertical reinforcement of the wall , whichever is the less ;</i> and</p> <p>(ii) <i>Vertical and horizontal trimming bars of size of not less than the vertical reinforcement bars of the wall are provided around the hole and at both side of the wall.</i></p>	
150mm	<i>Practice Note for Authorized Persons, APP-110</i>	<i>Protective Barriers Design Requirements</i>	<p>2. In all circumstances, <i>a barrier should have a height of not less than 1.1m.</i></p> <p><i>The lowest 150mm</i> of the barrier should be built solid (except for staircases enclosed with walls and without open stair-well1). Any gap or opening in the barrier should be so constructed as to inhibit the passage of particles more than 100mm in its smallest dimension.</p> <p>3. <i>The height of a barrier should be measured from the finished floor level of the surface adjoining the barrier where people could step on (adjoining floor level). In this connection, the top of a curb or step next to a barrier would not be regarded as an adjoining floor level if the curb or step is higher than 500mm or its protruding width2 is less than 75mm.</i></p> <p>4. <i>For railing type barrier on a curb of less than 500mm high, the top of the lowest horizontal rail should be not more than 250mm above the adjoining floor level. In addition, the barriers should be designed to minimise the risk of persons climbing over the barrier.</i></p> <p>5. <i>As barriers required under regulation 8 of the B(C)R are for restricting or controlling the movement of persons and vehicles, this regulation should not apply to any areas of a building which is inaccessible . For the purpose of this practice note, an inaccessible area means an area which is only accessible to restricted personnel for maintenance works or by the use of a cat-ladder or other special appliances . However, authorized persons are strongly advised to take into account the requirements under section 6 of the Occupational Safety and Health Regulation (Cap. 509A) at the design stage of the building.</i></p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
	<i>Practice Note for Authorized Persons, APP-125</i>	<i>Level Difference for Floor Adjoining External Ground Level or Flat Roof</i>	<p>2. These requirements can generally be catered for at the design stage by allowing sufficient difference in level between the internal floor and the external ground or adjoining flat roof. However, there could be cases where authorized persons wish to depart from the prescribed requirements due to special circumstances of their cases or as a result of the unique nature of their designs. In such circumstances, the Building Authority (BA) is prepared to consider granting exemption from the above regulations to allow flexibility in design if means to guard against the ingress of water to the inside of the building are provided to the satisfaction of the BA.</p> <p>3. Each application for exemption or modification of Regulations 35 or 49(1) of the B(C)Rs will be considered on its own merits. The BA, however, will give favourable consideration to the following design criteria: (a) Provision of additional drainage channels, each with at least 2 no. of drainage outlets; and (b) Provision of a fall, not less than 1:80, on the flat roof or external ground sloping away from the adjoining internal/usable floor area.</p> <p>4. In the event that the above measures cannot be implemented for whatever reason, the provision of a kerb, with water proofing construction, at the ccess pointhaving a total height of 150mm above the adjoining roof or external ground may also be considered.</p>	
	<i>Practice Note for Authorized Persons, APP-133</i>	<i>Cast Iron Pipes for Drainage Works</i>	<p>(a) All pipes and fittings shall be in accordance with the relevant British Standards Specifications or other equivalent standards. (For example, BS 416:Part 1 or BS EN877 for C.I. pipes for above-ground drains; BS 437 or BS 4622 for underground system and above-ground drains larger than 150mm diameter.)</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
150mm	APSEC Discussion Forum on 04 aug 2014	<p>10. Matters Arising from Previous Discussion Forum</p> <p>(a) Item 5 in Discussion Forum 3/2013 held on 10 May 2013: Curtain wall along column is accepted as long as the column was a genuine column.</p> <p>(i) By the same token, would like to confirm curtain wall at external face of transfer plate shall be accepted as the transfer plate shall be a genuine structural element and no additional building bulk is created. (ii) Also, would like to confirm curtain wall at external face of roof RC parapet wall shall be accepted as roof area to be non-GFA accountable and no additional building bulk is created, the curtain wall along the roof RC parapet wall shall be accepted and to be non-accountable for GFA and SC. Should RC parapet wall was replaced by 150mmH RC curb with curtain wall as protective barrier, the curtain wall</p> <p>(b) Item 15 in Discussion Forum 5/2012 held on 26 Oct 2012: Architectural features not exceeding 500mm from external walls of a building are accepted to be incorporated in a curtain wall design and to be non-accountable for GFA and SC</p> <p>There has been requirement to maintain certain separation between the 500mm Achiternal features but there are no standards for AP to follow.</p> <p>Please advise the acceptable separation distance between these features.</p>	<p>(i) The BD confirmed that the transfer plate would be treated in a similar manner as columns in a typical floor. As such, the curtain wall outside the transfer plate would be ignored in the GFA calculation.</p> <p>ii) Diagram on the Left – the BD confirmed that the curtain wall thickness should be ignored in considering PR / SC. Diagram on the below – the BD confirmed the same but raised concerns for the lateral load for barrier to be supported by the curtain wall rendering the proposed curtain wall not meeting the acceptance</p> <p>cr</p>  <p>(b) The BD noted and advised that it would review and consider.</p> 	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
200 mm	<i>Building (Construction) Regulations (Cap. 123 sub. leg. B)</i>	PART X CHIMNEYS AND FIREPLACES 44. Application of regulations	This Part shall <i>apply to all chimneys and flues the internal size of which exceeds 200 mm in diameter, breadth or width</i> , or <i>3 m in height.</i>	
	<i>Building (Planning) Regulations (Cap. 123 sub. leg. F) / Design Manual Barrier Free Access 2008</i>	19. Protection and surface / Division 5 ---RAMPS	<p>(1) Any ramp— (a) with <i>a rise greater than 200 mm</i> ; and (b) <i>leading down towards an area where there may be vehicular traffic, shall have a railing or barrier at a distance of not less than 1 500 mm from the foot of the ramp across the full width of the lower end of the ramp .</i> (2) <i>On the surface of a ramp, raised traction strips shall be avoided .</i> (3) <i>A kerb of not less than 100 mm in height , or a rail 200 mm above ramp level, shall be provided on both sides to prevent a wheelchair from slipping over the edge.</i> (4) There shall be <i>no appliances, fixtures or fittings projecting beyond 90 mm from the surface of any wall adjacent to a ramp below a level of 2 000 mm above the ramp level</i> Last unless such appliances, fixtures or fittings are unavoidable on reasonable ground. (5) Appliances, fixtures and fittings that are unavoidable on reasonable ground shall be— (a) <i>extended downwards to the ramp level; or (b) guided by tactile flooring materials .</i> (6) <i>The floor and wall along ramps shall be in contrasting colours .</i></p> 	

DATA	Related Requisitions		Descriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
200 mm		Third Schedule—Part 2—Division 13 66. Size of signs	1) This section applies to signs displayed in compliance with this Division. (2) <i>The height of signs displayed on doors shall be not less than 60 mm.</i> (3) <i>The height of signs displayed in corridors shall be not less than 110 mm.</i> (4) <i>The height of signs displayed at external locations shall be not less than 200 mm.</i>	
	Design Manual Barrier Free Access 2008	Division 10 ---DOORS  <small>FIGURE 23 - OVERLOOK OF OUT-SWINGING AUTOMATIC DOORS</small>	B. Recommended Design Requirements External Doors (a) <i>External door should be single-action and open outwards to obviate high tension in spring closers in sustaining wind pressure.</i> Latched Doors (b) <i>Where door is latched, lever-type handle should be used.</i> Kick-plates (c) <i>All doors which allow the passage of wheelchairs should have kick-plates of not less than 200 mm high fitted on the face which swings away.</i> Automatic Door Openers (d) <i>Automatic door opener should be provided on the main entrance door of buildings not included in paragraph 45 and should:</i> i) <i>remain open for a minimum of 5 seconds;</i> (ii) <i>have a guardrail where it opens into a route of travel (see Figure 23);</i> (iii) <i>have a sign showing automatic door; and</i> (iv) <i>be located outside of the door swing.</i> Sliding automatic door with overhead sensor operating device or manual large button control should be provided.	
		Diagram D11: No Parking Sign (Clause D24.2(c))	 <small>0 25 50 100mm</small>	Notes: 1. The specifications of "No Parking" signs shall follow the provisions in Road Traffic (Parking on Private Roads) Regulations, Cap. 374, Laws of Hong Kong and the Code of Practice for Private Roads. 2. <i>The diameter of the "No Parking" sign to be erected at both ends of the EVA shall be 450mm</i> whereas for those in between, signs of 200mm or 300mm diameter may be employed.

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks																																																																							
	Manuals	Page/Table																																																																									
Code of Practice for Fire Safety in Buildings 2011		TABLE E4 FLOORS AND LANDINGS	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th rowspan="2">Construction and Materials</th> <th colspan="3">Minimum thickness in mm for FRR of</th> </tr> <tr> <th>240 mins</th> <th>120 mins</th> <th>60 mins</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td colspan="4">SOLID REINFORCED CONCRETE CONSTRUCTION</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Thickness of concrete</td> <td>170</td> <td>125</td> <td>100</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Concrete cover to all reinforcement -</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td> simply supported</td> <td>55*</td> <td>35</td> <td>20</td> </tr> <tr> <td> continuous</td> <td>45*</td> <td>25</td> <td>20</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="4">SOLID PRESTRESSED CONCRETE CONSTRUCTION</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Depth including screed</td> <td>170</td> <td>125</td> <td>100</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Concrete cover to all reinforcement -</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td> simply supported</td> <td>65*</td> <td>40</td> <td>25</td> </tr> <tr> <td> continuous</td> <td>55*</td> <td>35</td> <td>20</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Reinforcement consisting of expanded metal lath or a wire fabric not lighter than 0.5kg/m² with 2mm diameter wire at <i>not more than 100mm centres or a continuous arrangement of links at not more than 200mm centres</i> should be incorporated in <i>the concrete cover at a distance not exceeding 20mm from the face.</i></p>	Construction and Materials	Minimum thickness in mm for FRR of			240 mins	120 mins	60 mins	SOLID REINFORCED CONCRETE CONSTRUCTION				Thickness of concrete	170	125	100	Concrete cover to all reinforcement -				simply supported	55*	35	20	continuous	45*	25	20	SOLID PRESTRESSED CONCRETE CONSTRUCTION				Depth including screed	170	125	100	Concrete cover to all reinforcement -				simply supported	65*	40	25	continuous	55*	35	20																									
	Construction and Materials	Minimum thickness in mm for FRR of																																																																									
		240 mins	120 mins	60 mins																																																																							
SOLID REINFORCED CONCRETE CONSTRUCTION																																																																											
Thickness of concrete	170	125	100																																																																								
Concrete cover to all reinforcement -																																																																											
simply supported	55*	35	20																																																																								
continuous	45*	25	20																																																																								
SOLID PRESTRESSED CONCRETE CONSTRUCTION																																																																											
Depth including screed	170	125	100																																																																								
Concrete cover to all reinforcement -																																																																											
simply supported	65*	40	25																																																																								
continuous	55*	35	20																																																																								
		TABLE E6 REINFORCED CONCRETE COLUMNS AND BEAMS	<p style="text-align: center;">REINFORCED CONCRETE COLUMNS AND BEAMS</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th rowspan="2">Construction and Materials</th> <th colspan="3">Minimum overall size of column in mm for FRR of</th> </tr> <tr> <th>240 mins</th> <th>120 mins</th> <th>60 mins</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td colspan="4">REINFORCED CONCRETE COLUMNS AND HANGERS</td> </tr> <tr> <td>(a) Fully exposed columns and hangers</td> <td>450</td> <td>300</td> <td>200</td> </tr> <tr> <td> Concrete cover to main reinforcement</td> <td>35</td> <td>35</td> <td>25</td> </tr> <tr> <td>(b) 50 per cent exposed of columns and hangers</td> <td>350</td> <td>200</td> <td>160</td> </tr> <tr> <td> Concrete cover to main reinforcement</td> <td>35</td> <td>25</td> <td>25</td> </tr> <tr> <td>(c) One face exposed of columns and hangers</td> <td>240</td> <td>160</td> <td>120</td> </tr> <tr> <td> Concrete cover to main reinforcement</td> <td>25</td> <td>25</td> <td>25</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="4">REINFORCED CONCRETE BEAMS</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Width of beam</td> <td>280</td> <td>200</td> <td>200</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Concrete cover to main reinforcement -</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td> simply supported</td> <td>80*</td> <td>50*</td> <td>30</td> </tr> <tr> <td> continuous</td> <td>60*</td> <td>40</td> <td>30</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="4">PRESTRESSED CONCRETE BEAMS</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Width of beam</td> <td>280</td> <td>200</td> <td>200</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Concrete cover to tendons -</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td> simply supported</td> <td>90*</td> <td>70*</td> <td>30</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>* Reinforcement consisting of expanded metal lath or a wire fabric not lighter than 0.5kg/m² with 2mm diameter wire at <i>not more than 100mm centres or a continuous arrangement of links at not more than 200mm centres</i> should be incorporated in the <i>concrete cover at a distance not exceeding 20mm from the face.</i></p>	Construction and Materials	Minimum overall size of column in mm for FRR of			240 mins	120 mins	60 mins	REINFORCED CONCRETE COLUMNS AND HANGERS				(a) Fully exposed columns and hangers	450	300	200	Concrete cover to main reinforcement	35	35	25	(b) 50 per cent exposed of columns and hangers	350	200	160	Concrete cover to main reinforcement	35	25	25	(c) One face exposed of columns and hangers	240	160	120	Concrete cover to main reinforcement	25	25	25	REINFORCED CONCRETE BEAMS				Width of beam	280	200	200	Concrete cover to main reinforcement -				simply supported	80*	50*	30	continuous	60*	40	30	PRESTRESSED CONCRETE BEAMS				Width of beam	280	200	200	Concrete cover to tendons -				simply supported	90*	70*	30	
Construction and Materials	Minimum overall size of column in mm for FRR of																																																																										
	240 mins	120 mins	60 mins																																																																								
REINFORCED CONCRETE COLUMNS AND HANGERS																																																																											
(a) Fully exposed columns and hangers	450	300	200																																																																								
Concrete cover to main reinforcement	35	35	25																																																																								
(b) 50 per cent exposed of columns and hangers	350	200	160																																																																								
Concrete cover to main reinforcement	35	25	25																																																																								
(c) One face exposed of columns and hangers	240	160	120																																																																								
Concrete cover to main reinforcement	25	25	25																																																																								
REINFORCED CONCRETE BEAMS																																																																											
Width of beam	280	200	200																																																																								
Concrete cover to main reinforcement -																																																																											
simply supported	80*	50*	30																																																																								
continuous	60*	40	30																																																																								
PRESTRESSED CONCRETE BEAMS																																																																											
Width of beam	280	200	200																																																																								
Concrete cover to tendons -																																																																											
simply supported	90*	70*	30																																																																								
		TABLE E7 STAIRS	<p style="text-align: center;">STAIRS</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th rowspan="2">Construction and Materials</th> <th colspan="3">Minimum thickness in mm for FRR of</th> </tr> <tr> <th>240 mins</th> <th>120 mins</th> <th>60 mins</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Reinforced concrete construction -</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> <tr> <td> Thickness at waist of slab</td> <td>170</td> <td>125</td> <td>95</td> </tr> <tr> <td> Concrete cover to all reinforcement</td> <td>55*</td> <td>35</td> <td>20</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>* Reinforcement consisting of expanded metal lath or a wire fabric not lighter than 0.5kg/m² with 2mm diameter wire at <i>not more than 100mm centres or a continuous arrangement of links at not more than 200mm centres</i> should be incorporated in <i>the concrete cover at a distance not exceeding 20mm from the face.</i></p>	Construction and Materials	Minimum thickness in mm for FRR of			240 mins	120 mins	60 mins	Reinforced concrete construction -				Thickness at waist of slab	170	125	95	Concrete cover to all reinforcement	55*	35	20																																																					
Construction and Materials	Minimum thickness in mm for FRR of																																																																										
	240 mins	120 mins	60 mins																																																																								
Reinforced concrete construction -																																																																											
Thickness at waist of slab	170	125	95																																																																								
Concrete cover to all reinforcement	55*	35	20																																																																								

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
200 mm	<p><i>The Code of Practice on Design for Safety – External Maintenance</i></p>	<p>3.9 Signboard</p>	<p>3.9.1 The <i>major M&R works for signboard include inspection, repair and replacement</i> of the signboard and its components.</p> <p>3.9.2 <i>The M&R access for external signboard, other than access panel(s)</i> mentioned in paragraph 3.9.3 below, <i>shall be provided by fixed maintenance ladder or external walkway, maintenance staircase, maintenance access ladder and gantry system accessible from the interior of a building through maintenance access window or maintenance door, power-operated elevating work platform or suspended working platform.</i></p> <p>3.9.3 <i>Suitable inspection panel with each side or diameter, whichever is appropriate, of not less than 200 mm shall be provided for inspection of all the concealed fixings and structural members of a signboard unless they meet the criteria of relevant designated exempted works specified in Part 2</i> of Schedule 2 of the Building (Minor Works) Regulation (Cap. 123N).</p> <p><i>The inspection panel shall be readily openable without the use of special tools or destructive means . For the avoidance of doubt , inspection panel is not required for a signboard with banner/vinyl display mounted on supporting frames of signboards which is readily removable to expose the concealed fixing .</i></p>	
		<p>APPENDIX D STATUTORY OCCUPATIONAL SAFETY REQUIREMENTS</p>	<p>4. Where <i>construction works (including M&R works)</i> is undertaken and there is <i>a risk of falling from a height of 2 m or more , the M&R access (e.g. gangways and runs)</i> , where appropriate, shall be complied with the requirements as stipulated at the Third Schedule of the Construction Sites (Safety) Regulations (Cap. 59I), including the provision of:</p> <p><i>(a) Top guard-rail with a height of not less than 900 mm and not more than 1150 mm and intermediate guard-rail with a height of not less than 450 mm and not more than 600 mm;</i></p> <p><i>(b) Toe-board with a height of not less than 200 mm ;</i> and</p> <p><i>(c) Gangways and runs with a width of not less than 400 mm and for movement of materials with a width of not less than 650 mm</i> so far as reasonably practicable.</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
<p>300 mm</p>	<p>Practice Note for Authorized Persons APP-2</p>	<p>Calculation of Gross Floor Area and Non-accountable Gross Floor Area Building (Planning) Regulation 23(3)(a) and (b)</p> <p>Appendix B (PNAP-APP-2)</p> <p>Section of Curtain Wall System installed at New Building</p> <p>Section of Curtain Wall System installed at Existing Building</p>	<p>Calculation of Gross Floor Area Curtain Walls and Claddings 6. Under regulation 42 of the Building (Construction) Regulations (B(C)R), curtain wall means a non-load-bearing enclosure fixed onto the load-bearing structure with its dead loads, imposed loads and wind loads transferred to the structure through fixings. Where a curtain wall system (including other similar non load-bearing enclosure system) forms the external face of a building, the BA is prepared to accept2 the outer face of the structural elements, e.g. beams, columns and floor slabs, as the external wall for the purpose of measuring GFA and site coverage (SC) where:</p> <p>(a) The curtain wall system itself does not form part of the structural system of the parent building ;</p> <p>(b) The system does not result in any additional floor area at a floor level by providing a reinforced concrete dwarf perimeter wall not less than 300mm high measured from the floor level ;</p> <p>(c) The projection of the system from the outer face of the structural elements does not exceed 200mm for a domestic building and 250mm for a non-domestic building ;</p> <p>(d) The external reflectance3 of the glass used in the system does not exceed 20% ; and</p> <p>(e) Safe access and facilities are provided for the cleaning, maintenance and repair of the system .</p> <p>The method of measurement of GFA and SC is illustrated in the sketches at Appendix B for reference. For the avoidance of doubt, a purpose built hotel building including the hotel part of a building or a hotel converted from a non-domestic building is treated as a non-domestic building or non-domestic part of a building for the purpose of item (c) above.</p>	

DATA	Related Requisitions		Descriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
300 mm	Practice Note for Authorized Persons APP-42	Amenity Features	<p>Horizontal Screens and Trellis</p> <p>20. In <i>open areas frequently used by occupants at ground floors or podium floors; or roof gardens/play areas at podium floor around the perimeter of a domestic tower</i>, horizontal screens may be permitted to provide protection against inclement weather and falling objects subject to the following conditions:</p> <p>(a) <i>the horizontal screens will not materially affect the lighting and ventilation of the areas or nearby buildings</i> ;</p> <p>(b) <i>the areas are designated as common parts in the DMC or falling within the definition of “common parts” under the BMO, and</i></p> <p>(c) <i>the areas do not form part of any commercial premises</i></p> <p>21. In assessing the acceptability of the width of the horizontal screens, the BA will take into consideration the population using the facility, the size of the development and the design of the screens. In any case, the width of such screens allowed to be exempted from GFA calculation should not exceed 2 m.</p> <p>22. The erection of trellis for growing of plants at garden area and on roof, including main roof and set-back roof, may be permitted and the area of trellis may be exempted from GFA calculation subject to the following conditions:</p> <p>(a) <i>for roofs and gardens designated for private use, the maximum total area of the trellis is not more than 5% of the roof/garden area where it is situated or 20m², whichever is the less;</i></p> <p>(b) <i>for roofs and gardens designated as common parts in the DMC or falling within the definition of “common parts” under the BMO,</i> the maximum total area of the trellis is not more than 5% of the roof area and not more than 10% of the garden area where such roof/garden is situated. However, the maximum size of each trellis should not exceed 20m² ;</p> <p>(c) <i>the trellis should be an open-sided structure with a height of not more than the storey height of the floor where the trellis is situated. For trellis situated on the roof, the height of the trellis should not be more than the storey height of the floor below. The horizontal supports or intermediate bars should not be nearer than 200mm from one another ;</i></p> <p>(d) <i>the trellis should not obstruct any required prescribed windows/open air for offices, rooms for habitation, kitchen, lavatory, bathroom, etc . of any building. For the avoidance of doubt , no trellis should be located on a refuge roof.</i> The commentary to Clause B18.3 of the Code of Practice for Fire Safety in Buildings 2011 refers; and (e) compliance with the requirements from other departments including the Lands Department and Planning Department.</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
	<p style="text-align: center;">APSEC Discussion Forum on 26 October 2012</p>	<p>QUESTIONS : Undesignated Space in Carparking Floor As discussed before, a reasonable gap between a carparking space and a wall or a big column should be acceptable for getting on and off the car . However there are still cases reported from fellow architects that even a 200 mm gap is not acceptable . It is recalled that years ago, Transport Department in fact has required a 300 mm gap should be allowed between a carparking space and a wall , although such was not insisted afterwards. Therefore, BD is requested to consider acceptance of a space of 300 mm in case the side of the space is facing a wall.</p>	<p>BD commented that reasonable and genuine space such as a reasonable gap allowed for getting off against a flank wall / column might be disregarded from the GFA calculation under B(P)R 23(3)(b). BD further requested HKIA to respond to the suggestion of space allowed for EV charger provision as raised in 3/2012 Discussion Forum on 18.5.2012.</p>	

DATA	Related Requisitions		Descriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
300 mm	<p>APSEC Discussion Forum on 18 May 2012</p>	<p>Requirement of electrical charging under PNAP APP-2 PNAP APP-2 requires that for private carparking spaces to be disregarded from GFA alculation under B(P)R 23(3)(b) they have to be electrical vehicle (EV) charging-enabling. However, there is no mentioning regarding the diversity factor in use of the charging facilities to be adopted. If the design of the fixed electrical system has to allow for all carparking paces to be charging EVs all at the same time, the power requirement would be enormous and this is unreasonable. It is also doubtful whether the local power supply network can support such power requirement in all new developments. The amount of carparking spaces having EV charging at the same time will also determine the number and sizes of transformer and switch rooms to be provided and hence the GFA</p>	<p>BD explained that while it was a projection that 30% of vehicles would be EV in the long run, only carparking spaces in new buildings would be required to have EV charging facilities and hence no diversity factor was adopted, i.e. 100% carparking spaces had to be EV charging-enabling in new buildings. BD also advised that GFA exemption would be granted for all necessary electrical rooms and installations associated with EV charging. Regarding exemption of GFA calculations for the space required for installing EV charging devices, especially those installed between carparking spaces, BD requested HKIA to provide information on the space requirement of the charging devices for consideration. BD would advise whether sockets should be provided for each carparking space before OP. [Post-meeting note : BD confirmed that each carpark space should be provided with electricity (provision of socket is optional) for EV charging before OP.]</p>	
	<p>APSEC Discussion Forum on 16 March 2012</p>	<p>MOE for Car Ramps Are the areas of the car ramps considered occupied spaces requiring means of escape? There may be difficulties in complying with dead end and gradient requirements for MOE. Will there be a difference in requirements in the case of an aboveground ramp as opposed to an underground ramp?</p>	<p>BD advised that when shutters are deployed to form fire compartments in carparks for Table C1 purpose, in case the dispositions of the shutters would result in portions of the car ramps being dead-locked upon activation of the shutters , it would be necessary to provide means of exit to the required staircases / open area / ultimate place of safety to cater for any person who might be trapped within such dead-locked portions of the car-ramp.</p>	

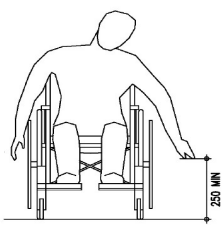
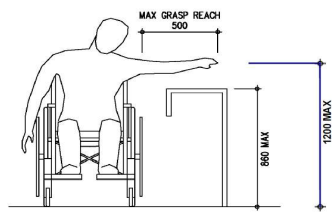
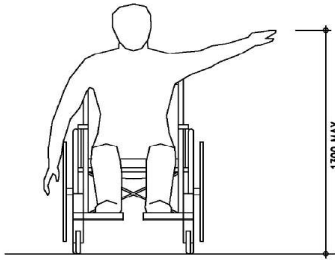
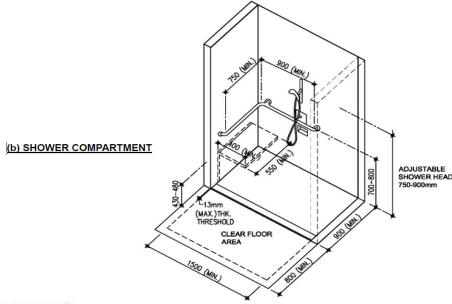
DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
300 mm	APSEC Discussion Forum on 3 August 2012	<p>Undesignated Space in Carpark</p> <p>Due to various reasons such as necessity to align basement wall, allowance of turning space for cars, allowance of space for getting off against blank wall, there are undesignated spaces in carpark which are difficult to avoid; BD are requested to allow exemption from GFA for such space provided they are block off by bollards and designated as common area in the DMC.</p>	<p>BD responded that <i>reasonable and genuine undesignated space in carpark would be acceptable in a carpark to be disregarded from the GFA calculation</i> . However, <i>excessive and uncalled for undesignated space would render the entire carpark not acceptable</i> to be disregarded from the GFA calculation. To avoid misuse of the undesignated space, provision of a raised platform, bollards or other appropriate measures might be considered on case basis .</p>	
	Design Manual Barrier Free Access 2008	<p>A.4 Side reach</p> 	<p>The maximum side reach, without obstruction , is 1300 mm from the floor and the minimum side reach is 250 mm from the floor as shown in Figures A8 and A9. The maximum side reach over an obstruction 860 mm high by 500 mm deep is 1200 mm from the floor as shown in Figure A10.</p> 	

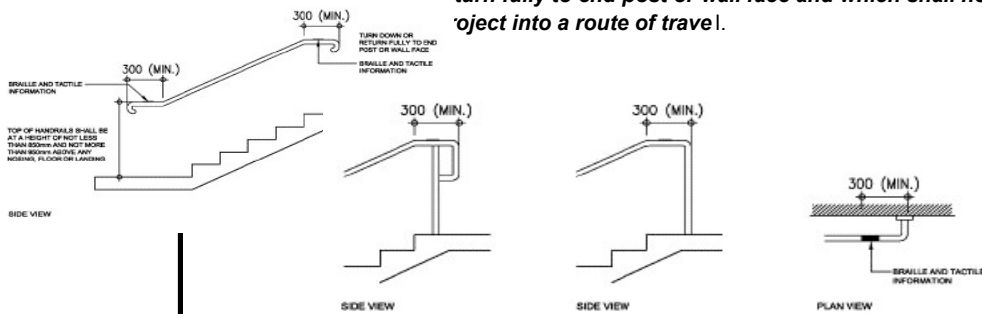
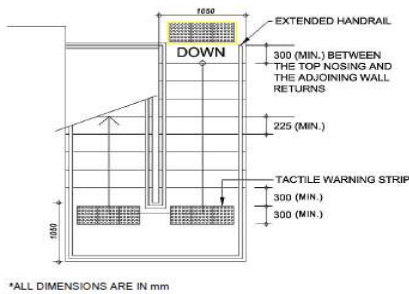
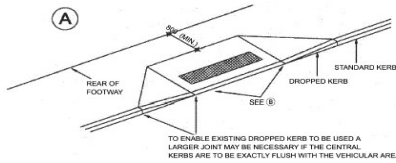
Figure A10 – Maximum Side Reach over an Obstruction

DATA	Related Regulations		Descriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
250mm		 <p>Figure A9 – Maximum Side Reach</p>	<p>There shall be a clear floor space of not less than 10mm x 800 mm in front of the bathtub (see Figure 27); The bathtub shall be provided with a seat of not less than 250 mm in width (see Figure 27); and The bathtub shall have a maximum height of 380 mm.</p>	
		<p>56. Bathtubs</p>	 <p>(b) SHOWER COMPARTMENT</p>	
250 mm	<p>Design Manual Barrier Free Access 2008</p>	<p>Telephone for Persons with Ambulant Disabilities and Wheelchair Users</p>	<p>(b) At least one in a group of two or more payphones should be designed for access by persons with a disability and in compliance with the following: (i) the approach to the accessible payphone should be free of obstacles ; (ii) the accessible payphone should not be placed on a stepped base unless a ramp in compliance with Division 5 is provided ; (iii) the cord length of the accessible payphone should not be less than 750 mm ; (iv) to facilitate wheelchair users , all operable parts including the coin slot of the accessible payphone should not be positioned higher than 1200 mm above the finished floor level ; (v) if there is an enclosure for the accessible payphone , the enclosure should begin no more than 650 mm from the finished floor level to prevent it from being a hazard to persons with visual impairment ; (vi) there should be a clear floor space of at least 750 mm by 1200 mm in front of the accessible payphone to allow either a forward or parallel approach by a wheelchair user ; (vii) if a parallel approach is adopted , the enclosure sides, if there is an enclosure, should not extend more than 250 mm in front of the face of the accessible payphone ; (viii) If a forward approach is adopted , the enclosure, if any, should have a clear width of at least 800 mm to provide wheelchair access ; shelves or other obstructions should not extend more than 400 mm from the face of the accessible payphone ; and there should be a space of 750 mm wide by 650 mm high by 430 mm deep for the footplate of a wheelchair ; (ix) if the accessible payphone is provided in an enclosed booth, the door of the booth should open outwards and have a clear width of not less than 800 mm between the open door and the opposite jamb or the other leaf; and (x) if the accessible payphones are provided in a booth</p>	

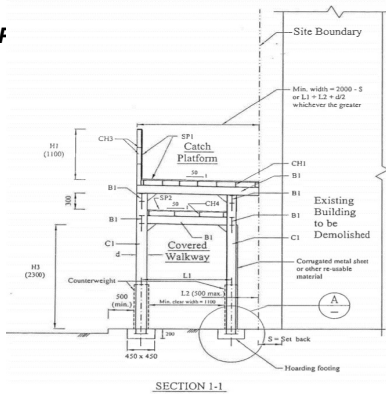
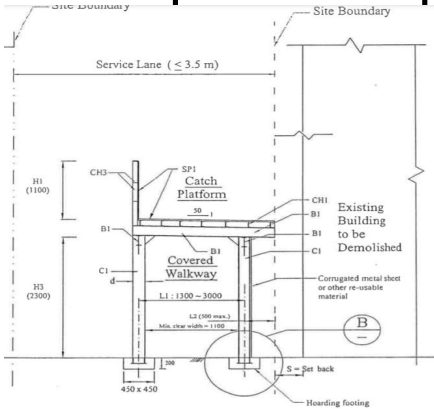
DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
300mm	<i>Building (Construction) Regulations (Cap. 123 sub. leg. B)</i>	<i>Further requirements for masonry retaining walls 81. Weep holes</i>	(1) Adequate weep holes shall be Provided through the face of every masonry retaining wall other than a retaining wall which is subject to regulation 48 of the Building (Planning) Regulations (Cap. 123 sub. leg. F). (2) A layer of drainage and filter material at least 300 mm thick shall be provided at the back of every masonry retaining wall .	
		<i>84. Bond courses required</i>	(1) <i>Retaining walls constructed of masonry exceeding 4 m in height shall be provided with one or more bond courses of—</i> (a) concrete at least 300 mm in depth; or (b) <i>reinforced concrete .</i> (2) <i>The distance between the foundation and the first of such bond courses and the distance between any 2 adjacent bond courses shall not exceed 2 m measured vertically.</i>	
	<i>Building (Construction) Regulations (Cap. 123 sub. leg. B)</i>	PART XIV WELLS <i>89. Safety measures required</i>	(1) <i>Every well of finished diameter greater than 500 mm shall be provided with suitably fixed rungs or foot rests not more than 600 mm apart for the entire dept h.</i> (2) Around the top of every well of finished diameter greater than 300 mm not provided with a fixed pump installation , a suitable parapet wall, not less than 750 mm in height, shall be provided. (3) <i>All wells with a fixed pump installation shall be provided with a securely fixed cover which may be locked to prevent public access and all other wells shall be fitted with a closefitting cover .</i>	

DATA	Related Regulations		Descriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
300 mm	Building (Planning) Regulations (Cap. 123 sub. leg. F)	Part II Projections	<p>7. Eaves, cornices, mouldings, etc.</p> <p>(1) An architectural projection (including eaves, cornice and moulding) that projects over a street—</p> <p>(a) must not project over the street more than 500 mm ; and</p> <p>(b) must not project at a height of less than 2.5 m above the ground level .</p> <p>(2) A pipe or gutter (including the appurtenances of the pipe or gutter) that projects over a street—</p> <p>(a) must not project over the street more than 300 mm ; and</p> <p>(b) must not project at a height of less than 2.5 m above the ground level.</p> <p>(3) A specified structure that projects over a street—</p> <p>(a) must not project over the street more than 750 mm ; and</p> <p>(b) must not project at a height of less than 2.5 m above the ground level.</p> <p>(4) A retractable awning that projects over a street—</p> <p>(a) must not project over the street more than 500 mm (when retracted) or more than 2.5 m (when fully extended);</p> <p>(b) must not project at a height of less than 2.5 m above the ground level;</p> <p>(c) if it projects over a street that has a carriage-way—must have a horizontal clearance of not less than 600 mm from the pavement kerb line ; and</p> <p>(3) Every canopy shall be provided with adequate surface water drainage. (L.N. 79 of 1992)</p> <p>(4) The maximum projection of any canopy (including cornices, mouldings or other features) erected over any street shall be—</p> <p>(a) one-tenth of the width of the street ; or</p> <p>(b) 3 m ,</p> <p>whichever is the less:</p> <p>Provided that no portion of any such canopy shall be within 4.5 m , measured horizontally , of a line drawn vertically from a point in the centre line of the street nearest to such portion of the canopy. (L.N. 33 of 1966)</p> <p>(5) (Repealed L.N. 79 of 1992) (L.N. 54 of 1969; L.N. 294 of 1976; L.N. 79 of 1992)</p>	
		Third Schedule—Part 2—Division 5	<p>18. Requirements for ramps</p> <p>(1) Subject to subsection (2), where the gradient of a ramp is 1 in 20 or steeper, the ramp shall be provided—</p> <p>(a) with a landing of not less than 1 200 mm in length for each 10 m length of horizontal run or part thereof;</p> <p>(b) on both sides with handrails that comply with Division 8; and</p> <p>(c) with tactile warning strips arranged in conformity to Figure No. 5 in Part 3 of this Schedule at the head, foot and landings.</p> <p>(2) Subsection (1) does not apply to —</p> <p>(a) a ramp access to lift ; or</p> <p>(b) a ramp less than 300 mm in length .</p>	
	Building (Planning) Regulations			

DATA	Related Requisitions		Descriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
300 mm	(Cap. 123 sub. leg. F)	21. Requirements for dropped kerbs	<p>Dropped kerbs shall be—</p> <p>(a) not less than 1 200 mm in length and 1 200 mm in width;</p> <p>(b) provided with a clearance not less than 800 mm in length at the back of the footway;</p> <p>mped at a gradient not steeper than 1 in 10;</p> <p>a level difference of not more than 15 mm with the</p> <p>ular areas;</p> <p>provided with a tactile warning strip at 300 mm from</p> <p>chicular areas; and</p> <p>vided with a tactile warning strip of a nominal width</p> <p>0 mm at the ramp.</p>	
		26. Tactile warning strip for staircase	<p>(1) Tactile warning strips arranged in conformity to Figure No. 6 in Part 3 of this Schedule shall be provided at—</p> <p>(a) landings of a staircase; and</p> <p>(b) both the top and bottom ends of a staircase.</p> <p>(2) Tactile warning strips provided at landings leading to a floor or landings enclosed by wall, railing or</p> <p>trade shall be 300 mm in width.</p> <p>tactile warning strips arranged in conformity to Figure in Part 3 of this Schedule shall be provided at—</p> <p>ndings of a staircase; and</p> <p>oth the top and bottom ends of a staircase.</p> <p>tactile warning strips provided at landings leading to r or landings enclosed by wall, railing or</p> <p>trade shall be 300 mm in width.</p>	
		Division 8—Handrails	<p>(5) A handrail shall—</p> <p>(a) extend horizontally not less than 300 mm beyond the first and last nosing of every flight of staircase or beyond the ends of a ramp; and</p> <p>(b) terminate into a closed end, which shall turn down or turn fully to end post or wall face and which shall not</p> <p>object into a route of travel.</p>	
	Building (Refuse Storage and Material Recovery Chambers and Refuse Chutes) Regulations	15. Minimum height of top of refuse chutes	<p>The top of every refuse chute shall be not less than 300 mm above the top of the highest hopper.</p>	




DATA	Related Requisitions		Descriptions	Remarks																																										
	Manuals	Page/Table																																												
300 mm		<p>Clause B27.6</p> <p>Table B6 – Maximum number of seats in a row</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th rowspan="2">Seatway width (mm)</th> <th colspan="2">Maximum number of seats in a row</th> </tr> <tr> <th>Gangway on one side</th> <th>Gangway on two sides</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>300 to 324</td> <td>7</td> <td>14</td> </tr> <tr> <td>325 to 349</td> <td>8</td> <td>15</td> </tr> <tr> <td>350 to 374</td> <td>9</td> <td>18</td> </tr> <tr> <td>375 to 399</td> <td>10</td> <td>20</td> </tr> <tr> <td>400 to 424</td> <td>11</td> <td>22</td> </tr> <tr> <td>425 to 449</td> <td>12</td> <td>24</td> </tr> <tr> <td>450 to 474</td> <td>12</td> <td>26</td> </tr> <tr> <td>475 to 499</td> <td>12</td> <td>28</td> </tr> <tr> <td>500 or more</td> <td>Limited by the maximum length of seatway of 12m</td> <td>Limited by the maximum length of seatway of 24m</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Table B7: Minimum width of Gangways</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>No. of persons served</th> <th>Minimum width of gangways</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Less than 500</td> <td>1 100 mm each</td> </tr> <tr> <td>501 – 1000</td> <td>1 200 mm each</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1001 – 1500</td> <td>1 350 mm each</td> </tr> <tr> <td>over 1500</td> <td>1500 mm each</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Seatway width (mm)	Maximum number of seats in a row		Gangway on one side	Gangway on two sides	300 to 324	7	14	325 to 349	8	15	350 to 374	9	18	375 to 399	10	20	400 to 424	11	22	425 to 449	12	24	450 to 474	12	26	475 to 499	12	28	500 or more	Limited by the maximum length of seatway of 12m	Limited by the maximum length of seatway of 24m	No. of persons served	Minimum width of gangways	Less than 500	1 100 mm each	501 – 1000	1 200 mm each	1001 – 1500	1 350 mm each	over 1500	1500 mm each	<p><i>The gangways and seatways layout of a cinema auditorium should comply with the following requirements:</i></p> <p>(a) <i>Maximum length of a row of seats in a cinema auditorium should not exceed 12m for a seatway with gangway on one side only, and 24m for a seatway with gangway on two sides ;</i></p> <p>(b) <i>The number of seats in a row should not be more than that set out in Table B6. The width of seatway is the minimum clear horizontal distance between the back of one seat unit and the nearest projection of the seat unit in the row behind . Where seats tip up automatically, the width of seatway should be measured between the back of one seat unit and the maximum projection of the seat unit behind when the seat is in the tipped-up position. In all cases there shall be an unobstructed way or space of at least 300mm . The seating should be firmly fixed to the floor;</i></p> <p>(c) <i>Gangways of not less than the width shown in Table B7 should be provided;</i></p> <p>(d) <i>Where steps are provided in intersecting gangways, suitable handgrips should be provided at the ends of the seats ; and</i></p> <p>(e) <i>There should be no projection into a gangway that diminishes the clear width of the gangway.</i></p>	
	Seatway width (mm)	Maximum number of seats in a row																																												
Gangway on one side		Gangway on two sides																																												
300 to 324	7	14																																												
325 to 349	8	15																																												
350 to 374	9	18																																												
375 to 399	10	20																																												
400 to 424	11	22																																												
425 to 449	12	24																																												
450 to 474	12	26																																												
475 to 499	12	28																																												
500 or more	Limited by the maximum length of seatway of 12m	Limited by the maximum length of seatway of 24m																																												
No. of persons served	Minimum width of gangways																																													
Less than 500	1 100 mm each																																													
501 – 1000	1 200 mm each																																													
1001 – 1500	1 350 mm each																																													
over 1500	1500 mm each																																													
	<p>Code of Practice for Fire Safety in Buildings 2011</p>	<p>Subsection B28 – Temporary Buildings Clause B28.1</p>	<p>Seating should comply with the following requirements:</p> <p>(a) There should be an unobstructed way or space of at least 300mm measured between perpendiculars between the back of one seat and the front of the seat immediately behind ; and</p> <p>(b) <i>The seating should be fixed firmly to the ground, floor or decking and if separated chairs are used they should be securely battened together in lengths of not less than 4 .</i></p>																																											

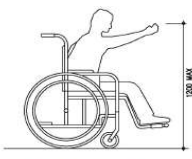
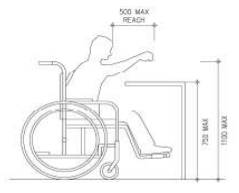
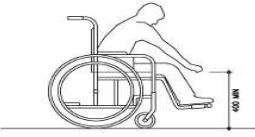
DATA	Related Requisitions		Descriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
		<p>Demolition Works Measures for Public Safety</p> <p><i>Practice Note for</i></p>  <p>SECTION 1-1</p>	<p>Design of hoarding, covered walkway and gantry, and catch platform</p> <p>23. Reference could be made to Chapter 3 of Code of Practice for Demolition of Buildings 2004 for the general design requirements of hoarding, covered walkway and gantry, and catch platform. The deck of the catch platform shall be designed to support a uniformly distributed load of 5.0 kPa or a point load of 20 KN acting on an effective area of 300mm x 300mm. Being a temporary structure, a wind load of 0.67 kPa (i.e 37 % of the design wind pressure of 1.82 kPa as given in the Code of Practice on Wind Effects in Hong Kong 2004) could be adopted for checking the stability of these structures.</p> <p>24. A design example of a gantry with single bay hoarding on each side is given in Appendix B for reference. If the catch platform which shall have a minimum 2000mm distance from the existing building line encroaches into the 500mm (minimum) recess from the carriageway, the catch platform shall be raised to allow 5500mm headroom over the carriageway . For narrow service lane (width 3.5 m or less) which are generally shielded from wind, a single deck design with the deck functioning as a catch platform fully capable of resisting the superimposed design loads is considered acceptable because of the relatively lower risks associated with these areas. A single deck design for narrow service lanes is also given in Appendix B for reference.</p> <p>Structural justification may not be required if the parameters as adopted in the design examples are strictly followed.</p>	
300 mm		 <p>SECTION 1-1</p>	<p>25. Site constraints such as the presence of congested underground utilities and narrow pedestrian walkways may sometime prohibit the construction of footings and underweight, or render the sole reliance on counterweight maintaining stability uneconomical. Under such circumstances, AP/RSE are encouraged to consider more economical designs with recyclable materials as alternatives the examples given in Appendix B. Such alternatives may include the adoption of a rigorous analysis and/or the provision of tie forces at upper levels in securing the stability of the structure, thus reducing counterweight and/or some structural members' sizes.</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
300 mm	Practice Note for Authorised Persons APP23	<p>Hoardings, Covered Walkways and Gantries (including Temporary Access for Construction Vehicles) Part IX of Building (Planning) Regulations Appendix A (PNAP APP-23) Highways Department and Transport Department Standard Requirements for Hoardings / Covered Walkways A. Highways Department</p>	<p>(1) The internal layout of the site shall be so arranged that no backing in/out movement of construction traffic is required except in cases where small or narrow sites are involved in which case reversing into the site will be permitted.</p> <p>(2) The hoarding shall be properly lit at night .</p> <p>(3) The promoter (i.e. the one who finances the proposed excavation works) should apply for an Excavation Permit from the Regional Office of Highways Department (HyD) prior to the commencement of excavation works on a public road maintained by HyD. One copy of the approved plan should accompany his application, together with a copy of the Hoarding Permit issued by the Buildings Department.</p> <p>(4) A clear width of not less than 500 mm shall be maintained between the edges of the hoarding and the carriageway .</p> <p>(5) Where the hoarding and covered walkway are erected on the carriageway, no obstruction to the drainage channels and gullies of the road shall be permitted . The authorized person (AP) shall be responsible for the removal of all obstructions to the flows in the drainage channels and gullies. Lighting and guarding in accordance with the Road Traffic (Traffic Control) Regulations shall be provided by the AP . Relevant requirements stipulated in the Code of Practice for the Lighting, Signing and Guarding of Road Works should also be followed.</p> <p>(6) The maximum insertion of footing into public pedestrian pavement shall be limited to 450mm. Any concrete plinth sitting on pavement shall not be more than 250mm in thickness and not more than 1000mm in height, and the minimum clear spacing between two concrete plinths shall not be less than 1100mm . The exposed faces of the concrete plinth shall be of smooth surface and any exposed edges and corners shall be chamfered.</p> <p>(7) The hoarding / covered walkways shall be erected at no more than 300mm away from the lot boundary .</p> <p>(8) The hoarding/covered walkway shall not obscure any street lights. Where any street light will likely be affected by the hoarding/covered walkway, the proposal should be sent to the Chief Engineer/Lighting of HyD for comment . Where temporary removal or resiting of existing street light is required, the AP should request HyD for such removal / resiting, at the lot owner's cost, with sufficient advance notice. In case the floor of a hoarding / covered walkway obstructs access to the street light draw-pit, the relevant section of the floor should be portable and removable.</p> <p>(9) The AP is required to notify HyD and, if necessary, submit photographic record of original condition of footpath before commencement of hoarding erection, in particular for those hoardings with concrete bases for which application for Excavation Permit is not required.</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
300 mm	Practice Note for Authorised Persons APP 68	Design and Construction of Cantilevered Reinforced Concrete Structures	<p>Cantilevered Beams</p> <p>5. The structural design of cantilevered beams should satisfy the following requirements:-</p> <p>(a) The overall depth at support should be at least 300mm .</p> <p>(b) Top and bottom steel reinforcing bars should be securely held in position by stirrups with the top bars anchored in accordance with clause 9.4.3 of the Concrete Code, and any top bar extended to resist support moments in the adjacent span should also comply with the curtailment rules specified in the Concrete Code. Where support by cross beam cannot be avoided, the supporting beam and the adjacent internal slabs should be adequately designed and properly detailed for any internal moment, torsion, shear and axial force so induced.</p> <p>(c) External cantilevered beams should be designed for exposure condition 2 or higher if appropriate in accordance with the Concrete Code.</p>	
	Practice Note for Authorised Persons APP 126	Erection of Signboards Fire Services Department's Requirements for Signboards	<p>1. A signboard if projecting over a street shall have a minimum horizontal clearance of not less than 4.5 m from central divider, adjacent highway structures or pavement curb at the opposite side whichever is nearer to the signboard.</p> <p>2. A signboard shall have a minimum headroom clearance of 5.8 m if projecting over a carriageway and shall have a minimum vertical clearance of 5 m above the elevated road level of any adjacent highway structure .</p> <p>3. Two adjacent projecting signboards shall have a minimum lateral clearance of 2.4 m . No signboard shall be allowed within this lateral clearance at a level higher or lower than the two signboards .</p> <p>4. Signboards erected from the opposite sides of a street shall not project within 1.5 m from the geometrical centerline of the street.</p> <p>5. Guy wires tied to secure signboards shall not run laterally or diagonally on either side of signboards to minimize the possible obstruction to access to upper floors by fire services ladders.</p> <p>6. No light tubing, electrical circuits or lamps shall be installed on woodwork or other combustible material.</p> <p>7. The transformer, light tubing and other parts of high voltage circuit shall be located out of reach of the public.</p> <p>8. No roof exit shall be obstructed by the signboard or any of the steelwork used in the construction of the signboard .</p> <p>9. A signboard shall not cause any obstruction to openable windows .</p> <p>10. A fireman's emergency switch of an approved type shall be provided if the signboard has been connected to an electricity supply . The switch shall be situated in a conspicuous position, not more than 3m but not less than 2.5m from ground level . It shall either be as nearly as possible vertically below the signboard or near the main entrance to the building, where appropriate. Notwithstanding</p>	

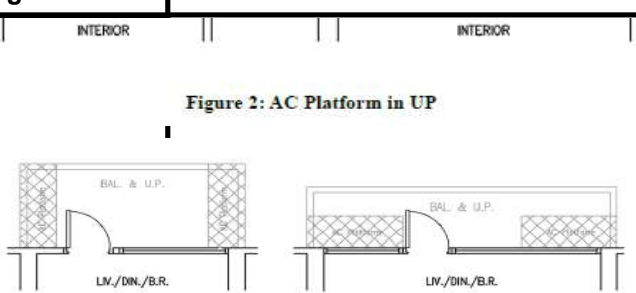

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
300 mm	Practice Note for Authorised Persons APP 126		<p>11. The 'ON' and 'OFF' position of the fireman's emergency switch shall be conventional (i.e. push upward – 'OFF'; push downward – 'ON')</p> <p>12. The switch is to be affixed on a board approximately 300 mm long by 250 mm wide, which is painted white and edged with a 50 mm red border. The inscription 'SIGNBOARD - FIREMAN'S SWITCH' in English is to be painted on the top and '招牌 - 消防員開關掣' in Chinese at the bottom of the board in black. The switch is to be positioned in the middle of the board.</p> <p>13. Precautionary measures should be taken to prevent the sparks generated from electric welding in the process of erecting signboards from igniting nearby combustibles.</p> <p>14. For signboards not wholly made of non-combustible materials, the following fire service installations and equipment required for the buildings in accordance with the Code of Practice for Minimum Fire Service Installations and Equipment should be extended to protect the signboards where applicable:-</p> <p>(a) Fire hydrant / hose reel system (b) Portable hand-operated approved appliance (c) Sprinkler system</p> <p>The above fire services requirements are not required for signboards classified as minor works or designated exempted works under the Building (Minor Works)</p>	
	APSEC Discussion Forum on 14 March 2014	<p>Height of Protective Barrier of Curtain Wall (Item raised by HKIA)</p> <p>HKIA raised that recently, BD had required in the pre-OP inspection of some developments that the height of the openable windows in the curtain wall be measured from the top of the adjacent 300mm high curb, despite a section in the approved GBP showing the height of openable windows being measured from the finished floor level.</p>	<p>The BD confirmed that the height of openable windows in a curtain wall should be measured from the top of the adjacent 300mm high curb (with a flat top surface).</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
300 mm	APSEC Discussion Forum on 18 January 2019	Clear Space at Foot of Accessible Ramp Pursuant to paragraph 16 in Division 5 of Chapter 4 of DMBFA 2008, a clear space of not less than 1500mm x 1500mm shall be provided at the head and foot of every ramp. As regards a G/F entrance ramp abutting a public pavement, we would like to clarify whether a clear space within the development of not less than 1500mm in width and 900mm in depth (i.e.handrails) would be required at the foot of the ramp. A sketch is provided below for reference	<p>BD would review and further advise. [Post Meeting Notes: BD confirmed that, for G/F entrance ramp abutting a public pavement, the provision of the 1500mm x 1500mm clear space at the foot of the ramp wholly within the curtilage of the development was not required provided that such clearance space would be available in the pavement for direct entry to and exit from the building. Notwithstanding this, a clear space within the development of not less than 900mm in depth, i.e. 600mm for tactile warning strip and 300mm for horizontal extension of the handrails as shown in Figures 7 and 16A of the DMBFA 2008 respectively, was still required to be provided at the foot of the ramp.]</p> 	
350mm	Building (Planning) Regulations	Third Schedule—Part 2—Division 11 49. Design of accessible water closet cubicle	<p>(1) The internal area of an accessible water closet cubicle shall be not less than 1 500 mm × 1 750 mm. (2) The clear manoeuvring space within an accessible water closet cubicle shall be not less than 1 500 mm × 1 500 mm in area measured at 350 mm above the finished floor level. (3) An accessible water closet cubicle shall have in it a water closet— (a) at a height of not less than 380 mm and not more than 450 mm, measured to the top of the toilet seat; (b) equipped with a back support such as a seat lid; and (c) the seat of which shall not be spring-actuated</p>	

DATA	Related Regulations		Descriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
400mm	Building (Planning) Regulations	Third Schedule—Part 2—Division 11 55. Urinals	<p>(1) If more than one urinal is provided, at least one urinal shall—</p> <p>(a) have a clear levelled space of not less than 800 mm in width and not less than 1 500 mm in depth in front of the urinal; and</p> <p>(b) be wall hung urinal with a front rim at a height of not more than 400 mm above the finished floor level.</p> <p>(2) Vertical grab rails shall be fixed on both sides of a urinal referred to in subsection (1) on the wall on which the urinal is mounted for use by persons with ambulant disabilities.</p> <p>(3) A grab rail shall—</p> <p>(a) have an external diameter of not less than 32 mm and not more than 40 mm;</p> <p>(b) be not less than 600 mm in length; and</p> <p>(c) be at a height of 1 200 mm above the finished floor level.</p>	
		Third Schedule—Part 2—Division 13 63. Shower seats	<p>A shower seat provided in an accessible shower compartment—</p> <p>(a) have a rounded edge;</p> <p>(b) be self-draining;</p> <p>(c) be installed on the wall adjacent to the wall on which the taps and other controls are mounted;</p> <p>(d) be not less than 550 mm in width and 400 mm in depth; and</p> <p>(e) shall be installed at a height of not less than 430 mm and not more than 480 mm measured from the top of the seat to the finished floor level.</p>	
		Third Schedule—Part 2—Division 16 71. Design of counters	<p>(1) A public information or service counter shall be accessible and easily identifiable from the building entrance by persons with a disability.</p> <p>(2) Leg space of—</p> <p>(a) not less than 400 mm and not more than 600 mm in depth; and</p> <p>(b) not less than 680 mm in height above the finished floor level,</p> <p>shall be provided at a public information or service counter</p>	
Design Manual Barrier Free Access 2008	APPENDIX A ANTHROPOMETRICS (All dimensions are in mm)	<p>A.3 Forward reach of a wheelchair user</p> <p>The maximum forward reach, without obstruction, is 1200 mm from the floor and the minimum forward reach is 400 mm from the floor as shown in Figures A5 and A7.</p> <p>The maximum forward reach over an obstruction 500 mm deep is 1100 mm from the floor as shown in Figure A6.</p>	  	

DATA	Related Regulations		Descriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
400 mm	<i>The Code of Practice on Design for Safety – External Maintenance</i>	APPENDIX B REQUIREMENTS OF AIR-CONDITIONER (AC) PLATFORM COMBINED WITH BALCONY/UTILITY PLATFORM (UP	An AC platform combined with a balcony and/or UP should satisfy the following criteria: (d) The length and depth of the working space should be not less than the length of the AC and 400 mm respectively;	
		REQUIREMENTS OF DESIGN AND SAFETY PROVISIONS FOR THE AIR- CONDITIONER PLATFORM Configuration of AC Platform	(b) Working Space The length and depth of the working space, either in front or at the back of the AC, should be not less than the length of the AC and 400 mm respectively. The length of the working space on one side of the AC should be not less than 400 mm which may be increased to a maximum of 500 mm if it also serves as the worker's landing through windows. Subject to the provision of screens at paragraph 5 or guard-rails at paragraph 6 below; and the provision of cast-in anchors at paragraph 6 below having been met, the working space in front or at the back of the AC may also serve as a maintenance passage to other AC and/or services and utilities provided in accordance with paragraph 3 below as appropriate. Minor encroachment onto the working space (e.g. supporting frame of the stacked up AC under paragraph 2(d) below, etc.) may be accepted.	
		STATUTORY OCCUPATIONAL SAFETY REQUIREMENTS	4. Where construction works (including M&R works) is undertaken and there is a risk of falling from a height of 2 m or more , the M&R access (e.g. gangways and runs), where appropriate, shall be complied with the requirements as stipulated at the Third Schedule of the Construction Sites (Safety) Regulations (Cap. 59I), including the provision of: (a) Top guard-rail with a height of not less than 900 mm and not more than 1150 mm and intermediate guard-rail with a height of not less than 450 mm and not more than 600 mm; (b) Toe-board with a height of not less than 200 mm; and (c) Gangways and runs with a width of not less than 400 mm and for movement of materials with a width of not less than 650 mm so far as reasonably practicable.	

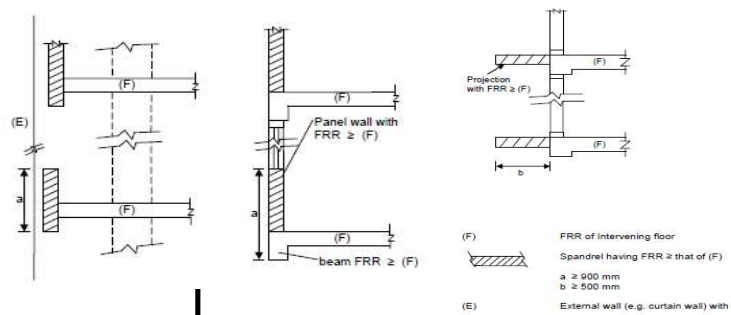
DATA	Related Requisitions		Descriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
		<p>REQUIREMENTS OF AIR-CONDITIONER (AC) PLATFORM COMBINED WITH BALCONY/UTILITY PLATFORM (UP)</p> <p>Figure 4: Section of AC Platform</p> <p>LEGEND:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ① ACCESS OPENING REFERS TO PARAGRAPH 1. ② MAXIMUM PROJECTION REFERS TO PARAGRAPH 2(a). ③ WORKING SPACE REFERS TO PARAGRAPH 2(b). ④ VENTILATION GAP REFERS TO PARAGRAPH 2(c). ⑤ SCREEN REFERS TO PARAGRAPH 2(d), 4 AND 5. ⑥ GUARD-RAIL REFERS TO PARAGRAPH 6. ⑦ CAST-IN ANCHOR REFERS TO PARAGRAPH 6. 	<p>An AC platform combined with a balcony and/or UP should satisfy the following criteria:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (a) Its disposition should follow Figures 1, 2 or 3 below; (b) A minimum of 50 mm rise in level from the finished floor of the balcony/UP should be provided in the AC platform; (c) A working space for maintenance of the AC should be provided either in the front or at the back of the AC and with direct access from the balcony/UP; (d) The length and depth of the working space should be not less than the length of the AC and 400 mm respectively; (e) Its outer edges should be provided with protective barriers as required under regulation 8 of the Building (Construction) Regulations; (f) Any screens provided to separate the AC platform from the balcony/UP should not be higher than 1.6 m and should have permeability not less than 70 %; (g) Any screens provided at the edge of the platform should not be higher than 1.1 m (1.6 m for platform with stacked ACs) and should have permeability not less than 70 %; and 	
			<p>(h) For exclusion of the AC platform from gross floor area calculation, the connected balcony/UP should be subject to Joint Practice Notes No. 1 and No. 2 (JPN 1 and JPN 2) and the following requirements are fulfilled –</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (i) The area of each AC platform shown in Figures 1 to 3 below should be not more than 0.8m². Hence, the outer edges of the AC platform should not be included in the perimeter of the balcony/UP or the covered area under the lowest balcony/UP; and (ii) The letter of undertaking required under paragraph 2(a) of Appendix A of JPN 1 and JPN 2 should include the designation of the AC platforms as 'areas for air-conditioning' in the Deed of Mutual Covenant (DMC) with details of the use and location clearly indicated and a requirement that individual AC platforms must not be erected at the external walls of the building. Where no DMC is to be in force for the development, such designation and requirement shall be incorporated into the Sales and Purchase Agreement, Assignment or the Tenancy Agreement such that the future owners or tenants are aware of their rights and liabilities. 	
		<p>The Code of Practice on Design for Safety – External Maintenance</p>	<p>Figure 1: AC Platform in Balcony</p>	

DATA	Related Requisitions		Descriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
400 mm		 <p>Figure 2: AC Platform in UP</p>  <p>Figure 3: AC Platforms in combined Balcony and UP (one AC platform is also acceptable)</p>		
	<p>APSEC Discussion Forum on 17 March 2017</p>	<p>Questions ; Maximum Width of Sash for Side-Hung Casement Window PNAP APP-116 Para. 6 stipulates that the maximum width of sash should be 700mm for side-hung casement window . With the use of 4-bar hinges, the maximum horizontal clearance of the window opening (i.e. between the frame and the sash in the open position) is just about 480mm. To cope with the recently issued "Guidelines for Design & Safety Provisions for A/C Platforms" requiring access opening to be of a minimum width of 500mm for access to A/C platform, we suggest to relax the maximum allowable width of sash for side-hung casement window to at least 800mm.</p>	<p>BD explained that the 700mm maximum width requirement imposed on side-hung openable sash was on the consideration of ergonomics . BD would consider on a case basis to accept wider side-hung sash provided that the window design could ensure safe operation without undermining the performance in ventilation . The use of limit-stay device which could maintain/restrain the extent of the window opening would be acceptable provided that full opening was still possible by means of handy device made available to occupants to avoid excessive reaching. Meanwhile, BD would also take a pragmatic approach in accepting the clear width of access opening to A/C platform via side-hung casement window to be slightly less than 500mm, noting the technical constraint of common 4-bar hinges as well as the need to comply with the 700mm . maximum width requirement for side-hung window sash , and would further review the said requirement at the "Working Group on Provision of Safe Access & Facilities for Repair and Maintenance of External Features". BD also clarified the intent of the Guidelines that if there was gondola access, the requisite access opening to A/C platform might not necessarily be 500mm min . As under such circumstances, the opening could be used for facilitating routine maintenance only such as refilling of refrigerants . Yet, the clear opening should not be less than 400mm for passage of workers . For change of A/C, the AP should indicate that the performance of the gondola could cater for such repair, e.g. capable of securely anchoring onto the external wall and housing in size and weight of the A/C and personnel .</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
500mm	<p><i>Building (Construction) Regulations Regulation 26 Cap. 123B</i></p>	<p>26. Pile foundations</p>	<p>(1) All pile foundations shall be of adequate load carrying capacity and of recognized type suitable for the ground conditions.</p> <p>(2) The allowable load on pile foundations shall be determined by—</p> <p>(a) acceptable foundation engineering principles; or</p> <p>(b) tests on the foundations on site, with an adequate factor of safety appropriate to the type of pile, taking into account ground conditions, the method of installation and group effects.</p> <p>(3) Where pile foundations are installed through a stratum which is likely to undergo consolidation after the foundations are in place—</p> <p>(a) the frictional resistance of the consolidating stratum and the overlying soil shall not be taken into account in the determination of the load carrying capacity; and</p> <p>(b) the downward frictional force exerted from the consolidating strata and the overlying soil shall be considered as imposed load.</p> <p>(4) Subject to the provisions of subregulation (5), the spacing of piles shall be determined with due regard to the nature of the ground, the method of construction and the group effects and shall be sufficient to prevent damage to the piles or any adjacent construction</p> <p>(5) The centres of all piles deriving their resistance mainly from friction and of all driven piles shall be placed—</p> <p>(a) <i>not less than the length of the perimeter of the pile or 1 m, whichever is the greater, from the centres of adjacent piles</i>; and</p> <p>(b) <i>not less than half the length of the perimeter of the pile or 500 mm, whichever is the greater, from the site boundary.</i></p> <p>(6) Where piles are placed in such proximity that the load carrying capacity of the piles may be affected by other piles a pile group shall be deemed to exist and the allowable load on any group of piles shall not exceed the sum of the load carrying capacities of the piles in the group multiplied by a group reduction factor determined in accordance with subregulation (7).</p> <p>(7) The group reduction factor shall be determined by recognized foundation engineering principles with respect to the bearing capacity and settlement of the pile group taking into account all the circumstances including the nature of the ground, the length and spacings of the piles, the size of the group and the method of construction.</p> <p>(8) The driving of piles shall take into account the properties and deformation characteristics of the pile, hammer and capblock in order that the driving energy will be applied in such a manner so as not to damage the material of the pile.</p> <p>(9) Subject to the provisions of subregulation (8), all driven steel and precast reinforced concrete piles shall be designed with an average compressive stress on the nominal cross sectional area at working load not exceeding—</p> <p>(a) 0.4 uw/F, in the case of precast reinforced concrete piles; and</p> <p>(b) 0.6 fy/F, in the case of steel piles,</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
500mm	Building (Construction) Regulations Regulation 26 Cap. 123B	PART XIV WELLS 88. Wells to be covered and lined	(1) The top of every well shall be suitably protected to prevent the direct entry of any surface water or sullage water. (2) Every excavated well of finished diameter greater than 500 mm that is not sunk into solid rock shall be properly lined for its entire depth with brickwork or other suitable material. (3) Every well of finished diameter less than 500 mm shall be properly lined where support to the sides of the well is needed. (4) The lining of every well shall seal the well to a sufficient depth below ground level to prevent contamination. (5) Where a well is liable to be rendered ineffective by the accumulation of particles drawn out of the ground a suitable filter shall be provided.	
		PART XIV WELLS 89. Safety measures required	(1) Every well of finished diameter greater than 500 mm shall be provided with suitably fixed rungs or foot rests not more than 600 mm apart for the entire depth . (2) Around the top of every well of finished diameter greater than 300 mm not provided with a fixed pump installation, a suitable parapet wall, not less than 750 mm in height, shall be provided. (3) All wells with a fixed pump installation shall be provided with a securely fixed cover which may be locked to prevent public access and all other wells shall be fitted with a closefitting cover.	
	Building (Planning) Regulations	Third Schedule—Part 2—Division 12 Cap. 123F 59. Shower heads	(1) A shower head for a bathtub in an accessible bathroom shall be— (a) of the hand-held type; (b) provided with a hose not less than 1 500 mm in length ; and (c) provided with a bracket mounted on the wall to allow use in a fixed position . (2) Where a shower head is mounted on a vertical bar , the bar shall be— (a) not less than 500 mm in length , with the lower end not less than 450 mm above the finished floor level ; (b) so installed that the use of grab rails referred to in section 57 is not obstructed; and (c) capable of carrying a static load of 150 kg .	
		Third Schedule—Part 2—Division 19 79. Lift doors	(1) Lift car doors and landing doors shall be of the horizontally sliding type, power-operated and automatically controlled . (2) An audible signal shall be provided to signify the closing of the doors to alert persons . (3) A detection device shall be provided to re-open the lift doors if the closing lift doors hit any obstacle . (4) Such detection device shall be positioned at not less than 500 mm and not more than 600 mm above the floor of the lift car.	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
		2. Interpretation	<p>canopy (簷篷) means any structure which projects more than 500 mm from any wall of any building and at a height of not more than 7.5 m above the level of the ground to provide protection from rain or sun, not carrying any floor load, either cantilevered or supported by brackets ; (G.N.A. 83 of 1959; L.N. 294 of 1976; L.N. 79 of 1992)</p>	
500mm	Building (Planning) Regulations	<p>Part II Projections (Format changes—E.R. 5 of 2020) 7. Eaves, cornices, mouldings, etc</p>	<p>(1) An architectural projection (including eaves, cornice and moulding) that projects over a street— (a) must not project over the street more than 500 mm ; and (b) must not project at a height of less than 2.5 m above the ground level . (2) A pipe or gutter (including the appurtenances of the pipe or gutter) that projects over a street— (a) must not project over the street more than 300 mm ; and (b) must not project at a height of less than 2.5 m above the ground level. (3) A specified structure that projects over a street— (a) must not project over the street more than 750 mm ; and (b) must not project at a height of less than 2.5 m above the ground level. (4) A retractable awning that projects over a street— (a) must not project over the street more than 500 mm (when retracted) or more than 2.5 m (when fully extended); (b) must not project at a height of less than 2.5 m above the ground level; (c) if it projects over a street that has a carriage-way—must have a horizontal clearance of not less than 600 mm from the pavement kerb line ; and (d) if it projects over a street that consists only of a footpath—must have a horizontal clearance of not less than 1.5 m from the centre line of the footpath. (5) A metal ventilation duct (including the associated supporting frame) that projects over a street— (a) must not project over the street more than 750 mm ; (b) must not project at a height of less than 2.5 m above the ground level ; and (c) if the duct or any part of it is located on, or hung underneath the soffit of, a balcony, verandah or canopy of a building—must not project beyond the edge of the balcony, verandah or canopy . (6) In this regulation— pipe (喉管) includes a water pipe and a drain pipe ; specified structure (指明構築物) means— (a) a drying rack; or (b) a supporting frame for an air-conditioning unit, light fitting, or antenna or transceiver for public telecommunications services . (L.N. 61 of 2020)</p>	

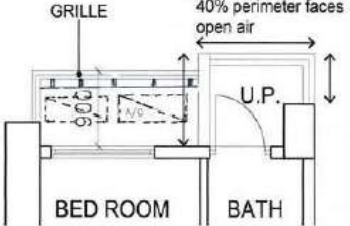
DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
	Code of Practice for Fire Safety in Buildings 2011	Subsection C11 – Protection against External Fire Spread Clause C11.1	<p>Subject to Subsection C5, the external wall of a building at any floor should be separated from the external wall at the floor next below by:</p> <p>(a) a spandrel that is a vertical element of 900mm, with an FRR of not less than that of the intervening storey;</p> <p>or</p> <p>(b) a horizontal projection of 500mm, with an FRR of not less than that of the intervening storey.</p> <p>This clause does not apply to a single family house or a sprinkler protected building.</p> <p>See Diagram C7 for illustration.</p> <p>Commentary</p> <p>A 900mm spandrel or 500mm horizontal projection is effective in slowing flame spread only and may not prevent fire spread. A sprinkler system installed in compliance with the requirements of the Director of Fire Services is the most effective form of fire control to prevent vertical fire spread.</p>	
			<p>Diagram C7: Protection against Spread of Fire by Spandrels (see Clause C11.1)</p> 	
500mm	Practice Note for Authorized Persons, APP-19		<p>3. It follows from the above that the following projections from the face of a building, having no significant impact on building bulk, need not be counted for SC and PR:</p> <p>(a) pitched roof eaves and flat roof overhangs complying with the projection and clear height limits in regulation 7(1) of the B(P)R (provided they are not contained within parapet walls as part of an accessible flat roof);</p> <p>(b) individual air-conditioner boxes and platforms of reasonable size and projecting not more than 750 mm, which have a built-in system for condensate disposal;</p> <p>(c) air-conditioner platforms complying with Appendices B and C of Code of Practice on Design for Safety – External Maintenance;</p> <p>(d) individual projections / window hoods complying with B(P)R and porches having projection not exceeding 2 m;</p> <p>(e) window cills and window surrounds projecting not more than 100 mm;</p> <p>(f) string courses, fins and architectural mouldings complying with the projection and clear height limits in regulation 7(1) of the B(P)R (but not structural beams and columns);</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
500mm	Practice Note for Authorized Persons, APP-19	Minor projecting features	<p>(g) window flower boxes projecting not more than 500 mm and complying with the design requirements as illustrated in the sketch in Appendix A;</p> <p>(h) external drainage pipes and gutters complying with the projection and clear height limits in regulation 7(2) of the B(P)R;</p> <p>(i) sunshades solely used for the purpose of energy conservation projecting not more than 1.5m from the external wall complying with the criteria set out in Practice Note for Authorized Persons, Registered Structural Engineers and Registered Geotechnical Engineers (PNAP) APP-67 and PNAP APP-156;</p> <p>(j) reflectors projecting not more than 1.5 m from the external walls, subject to submission of quantitative assessment of environmental benefits to the Building Authority for consideration in case they project over 0.5 m from the external walls;</p> <p>(k) canopies projecting not more than 2 m over an entrance to a building ;</p> <p>(l) drying racks and supporting frames for light fittings, antennas or transceivers for public telecommunications services complying with the projection and clear height limits in regulation 7(3) of the B(P)R;</p> <p>(m) retractable awnings for external wall openings complying with the projection and clear height limits in regulation 7(4) of the B(P)R and applicable positional, projection and clear height requirements under minor works item 2.43 in Schedule 1 of the Building (Minor Works) Regulation; and (n) metal supporting frames for growing of plants projecting not more than 300 mm from the external walls within lot boundary.</p>	
500mm		Projecting windows	<p>5. It follows from the above that all other projections must be included in SC and PR calculations. However projecting windows will not be regarded as GFA and will be accepted as not counting for SC and PR , if they satisfy all the following criteria within the storey from which they project</p> <p>(a) the projecting window is from living room, dining room or bedroom of domestic accommodation only;</p> <p>(b) only one such projecting window is allowed per room and it should be located on one external wall only;</p> <p>(c) the elevational area 1 of the projecting window does not exceed 50% of the area 1 of the external wall where the projecting window is located ;</p> <p>(d) the extent of the projection is not more than 100 mm from the outer face of the main external wall;</p> <p>(e) the base is not less than 500 mm above finished floor level;</p> <p>(f) the window complies fully with regulation 3A of the B(P)R. For the purposes of this requirement, the height of 1 100 mm protective barrier will be measured from floor level and any part of the window within this dimension should be fixed or otherwise suitably protected in line with paragraph (2) of the said Regulation; and</p> <p>(g) the projecting windows will not form a piecemeal addition to existing buildings .</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
	<i>Practice Note for Authorised Persons APP21</i>	<i>Demolition Works Measures for Public Safety</i>	<p><i>Design of hoarding, covered walkway and gantry, and catch platform</i></p> <p>24. A design example of a gantry with single bay hoarding on each side is given in Appendix B for reference. If the <i>catch platform which shall have a minimum 2000mm distance from the existing building line encroaches into the 500mm (minimum) recess from the carriageway</i>, the catch platform shall be raised to allow 5500mm headroom over the carriageway. For narrow service lane (width 3.5 m or less) which are generally shielded from wind, a single deck design with the deck functioning as a catch platform fully capable of resisting the superimposed design loads is considered acceptable because of the relatively lower risks associated with these areas. A single deck design for narrow service lanes is also given in Appendix B for reference. Structural justification may not be required if the parameters as adopted in the design examples are strictly followed.</p>	
500mm	<i>Practice Note for Authorized Persons, APP-42</i>	<i>Amenity Features</i>	<p>11. In a residential building, for an air-conditioning plant room to be provided to serve an individual unit, such room should be located with access from outside that residential unit or from the common area of the building. If an air-conditioning plant room is proposed with access within an individual residential unit, the authorized person (AP) should justify why access to such room cannot be located outside the unit. In any event, the provision and size of such rooms need to be justified before consideration for disregarding from GFA calculations will be given. 12. In the event that such plant room is permitted to be provided with access within the individual unit, such plant room should meet the following criteria before it may be disregarded from GFA calculation :-</p> <p>(a) <i>the floor of the plant room should have a level difference of a minimum of 500mm with the floor of the main accommodation</i> ;</p> <p>(b) <i>the plant room should have at least one side open, and provision of railing, open grille and louvre on the open side up to parapet level are acceptable. Enclosure above parapet level may be allowed where there is a need to separate the intake air and exhaust air.</i> Enclosure for the purpose of compliance with Clause C11.1 of the Code of Practice for Fire Safety in Buildings 2011 may also be allowed on the open side; and</p> <p>(c) <i>the open side should face into the open air.</i></p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
500mm	Practice Note for Authorised Persons APP 110	Protective Barriers	<p>Design Requirements</p> <p>2. In all circumstances, a barrier should have a height of not less than 1.1m. The lowest 150mm of the barrier should be built solid (except for staircases enclosed with walls and without open stair-well¹). Any gap or opening in the barrier should be so constructed as to inhibit the passage of particles more than 100mm in its smallest dimension.</p> <p>3. The height of a barrier should be measured from the finished floor level of the surface adjoining the barrier where people could step on (adjoining floor level). In this connection, the top of a curb or step next to a barrier would not be regarded as an adjoining floor level if the curb or step is higher than 500mm or its protruding width² is less than 75mm.</p> <p>4. For railing type barrier on a curb of less than 500mm high, the top of the lowest horizontal rail should be not more than 250mm above the adjoining floor level.</p> <p>In addition, the barriers should be designed to minimise the risk of persons climbing over the barrier.</p> <p>5. As barriers required under regulation 8 of the B(C)R are for restricting or controlling the movement of persons and vehicles, this regulation should not apply to any areas of a building which is inaccessible. For the purpose of this practice note, an inaccessible area means an area which is only accessible to restricted personnel for maintenance works or by the use of a cat-ladder or other special appliances. However, authorized persons are strongly advised to take into account the requirements under section 6 of the Occupational Safety and Health Regulation (Cap. 509A) at the design stage of the building.</p>	
	2015 APSEC Discussion Forum on 9 January 2015	<p>QUESTIONS :</p> <p>Architectural Features at Cladding</p> <p>According to the summary of a previous ADF (item(15)(d) in Oct 2012 ADF), architectural features not exceeding 500mm from the external walls of a building could be incorporated in a curtain wall design. By the same token, architectural features should also be acceptable to be projected on the 90mm external cladding works. Please confirm our understanding is correct.</p>	<p>The BD confirmed that architectural features projecting not more than 500mm from the external wall of a building with acceptable extent might be incorporated in curtain wall or external cladding design. For architectural features with projections exceeding 500mm, only the exceeding portion should be included in the GFA calculations.</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
500mm	APSEC Discussion Forum on 27 May 2016	<p>QUESTIONS: Issue of Revised PNAP APP-67 PNAP APP-67 has recently been revised to align with the corresponding requirements under PNAP APP-156 as follows: (a) the finalised OTTVs of the building and the shading coefficient of glass should be incorporated into general building plan for record and the final OTTV reports and related information should be submitted prior to the application of an occupation permit; and (b) quantitative assessment should be submitted to BA for consideration if the sunshades project over 750mm from external walls</p>	<p><i>Both OTTV and RTTV standards were subject to periodic review to keep pace with advancement in building design and technological development . PNAP APP-67 had recently been revised to align with the corresponding requirements under PNAP APP-156 as follows:</i> <i>(a) the finalized OTTVs of the building and the shading coefficient of glass should be incorporated into general building plan for record and the final OTTV reports and related information should be submitted prior to the application of an occupation permit ; and</i> <i>(b) quantitative assessment should be submitted to BA for consideration if the sunshades projected over 750mm (instead of the previous 500mm) from external walls.</i></p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
500mm	2016 APSEC Discussion Forum on 4 November 2016	<p>QUESTIONS ; Protection against External Fire Spread Clause C11.1 of COP for Fire Safety in Buildings 2011 reads: "Subject to Subsection C5, the external wall of a building at any floor should be separated from the external wall at the floor next below by: (a) a spandrel that is a vertical element of 900mm with an FRR of not less than that of the intervening storey : or (b) a horizontal projection of 500mm, with an FRR of not less than that of the intervening storey. This clause does not apply to a single family house or a sprinkler protected building." Based on the above, we would like to confirm that the fire separation requirement shall NOT apply to the sprinkler protected non-domestic floors of a composite building as illustrated in the following sketch:</p>	<p>Whilst "building" includes "any part of building" as per Section 2 of the Buildings Ordinance, BD re-confirmed that the fire separation requirement as per Clause C11.1 of the FS Code should NOT apply to the sprinkler protected non-domestic floors of a composite building. BD further elaborated that such fire separation was also NOT required at the portion of external wall between the non-sprinkler-protected domestic floor above and sprinkler-protected non-domestic floor below, considering that fire spread should be in an upward manner. However, for the vice versa arrangement, relevant fire separation between would still be necessary.</p>	
	2017 APSEC Discussion Forum on 17 March 2017	<p>Design, Disposition of A/C Platform As stipulated in para. 3(b) of PNAPAPP-19, individual A/C platforms of reasonable size, which have a built-in system for condensate disposal need not be counted for SC and PR. As such, reasonable AC platform projecting from the external wall and physically touching the side of the balcony / UP should be acceptable. Would BD confirm our understanding is correct?</p>	<p>BD advised that abusive use of the proposed configuration of A/C platform might be probable if it adjoined a balcony / UP. However, if the frontage of the site was so meagre but on the other hand a large A/C platform for 2 no. of A/C units was inevitable (had to be justified), a level difference of at least 500mm between the balcony / UP and the AC platform must be provided .</p> 	

DATA	Related Requisitions		Descriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
500mm	2018 APSEC Discussion Forum on 17 August 2018	<p>Design and Disposition of AC Platform Item 11 of ADF 2/2017 held on 17 March 2017 stated that a level difference of at least 500mm between the balcony/UP and the adjoining AC platform (large platform for 2 nos. of AC units) must be provided. Coupling with the requisite 150mm level drop between balcony/UP and the interior of the habitable space, as well as the 150mm thick AC platform, the resulting soffit of the AC platform would be at least 800mm below the floor of the unit. This would adversely limit the height of windows of the unit below, thereby prejudicing the optimal extent of lighting and ventilation from reaching the said unit. We would therefore like to seek BD's clarification and consideration that:</p> <p>(i) if the requirement can be relaxed/adjusted where no possible abusive use of the AC platform is readily envisaged, and</p> <p>(ii) such relaxation/adjustment, if any, is applicable to AC platform of all sizes.</p>	<p>BD advised that relaxation on the required level difference between balcony/UP and the adjoining AC platform would be considered on a case basis with due regard to the circumstances and difficulties of individual cases.</p> <p>[Post-meeting notes: Subsequent to an ad-hoc meeting held on 27.9.2018 with representatives of APSEC members, BD has reviewed the need of a 500mm level difference between the balcony/UP and the adjoining AC platform and it was concluded that a level difference would not be required if the AC platform would be at least 350mm away from the balcony/UP, adequate and proper access for maintenance of the AC unit(s) should be provided.]</p>	
600mm	Building (Construction) Regulations Regulation 5 Cap. 123B	8. Changes in level	<p>(1) At the outer edge of all balconies, verandahs, staircases, landings or projections, or where there is a difference in adjacent levels greater than 600 mm, protective barriers shall be provided to restrict or control the movement of persons and vehicles.</p> <p>(2) Protective barriers provided under this regulation to restrict or control the movement of persons shall be—</p> <p>(a) designed and constructed to minimize the risk of persons or objects falling, rolling, sliding or slipping through gaps in the barrier, or persons climbing over the barrier;</p> <p>(b) at a height above the higher of the adjacent levels of not less than 1.1 m ; and</p> <p>c) constructed as to inhibit the passage of articles more than 100 mm in their smallest dimension</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
600mm	Building (Planning) Regulations Regulation 8 Cap. 123F	10. Balconies and canopies over streets	<p>(1) Every canopy erected within 600 mm of the outer edge of a footpath, or projecting over a road, shall have a clear space of not less than 5.5 m beneath every part thereof.</p> <p>(2) Every canopy erected over a footpath shall have a clear space of not less than 3.3 m beneath every part thereof.</p> <p>(3) Every canopy shall be provided with adequate surface water drainage. (L.N. 79 of 1992)</p> <p>(4) The maximum projection of any canopy (including cornices, mouldings or other features) erected over any street shall be— (a) one-tenth of the width of the street; or (b) 3 m, whichever is the less: Provided that no portion of any such canopy shall be within 4.5 m, measured horizontally, of a line drawn vertically from a point in the centre line of the street nearest to such portion of the canopy. (L.N. 33 of 1966) (5) (Repealed L.N. 79 of 1992) (L.N. 54 of 1969; L.N. 294 of 1976; L.N. 79 of 1992)</p>	
		25. Space about domestic buildings	<p>(5) Where any open space or area is at a level more than 600 mm below an adjoining open space, safe parapet walls, railings or fences shall be provided by the person creating the difference in levels.</p>	
		18. Requirements for ramps	<p>(f) provided with a tactile warning strip of a nominal width of 600 mm at the ramp.</p>	
		26. Tactile warning strip for staircase	<p>(3) Tactile warning strips provided at landings leading to an open space or the entrance or exit of a building shall be 600 mm in width.</p>	
		Third Schedule—Part 2—Division 11 50. Flushing controls	<p>(1) This section applies to flushing controls in accessible water closet cubicles.</p> <p>(2) A flushing control shall be— (a) mounted on the wide side of the cubicle at a height of not less than 600 mm and not more than 1 050 mm above the finished floor level; and (b) hand-operated or automatic. (3) A hand-operated flushing control shall— (a) be capable of being operated with one hand; (b) not require tight grasping, pinching or twisting of the wrist; and (c) be able to be operated with a force not greater than 22 N.</p>	
		53. Grab rails in cubicles	<p>(1) Inside an accessible water closet cubicle, there shall be— (a) subject to subsection (2), at least one horizontal grab rail of not less than 600 mm in length and at least one vertical grab rail of not less than 600 mm in length arranged in L-shaped configuration fixed on the wall facing one side of the water closet; and (b) one folding grab rail fixed on the wall at the back of the water closet which can be lowered to provide support on the other side of the water closet. (7) A grab rail referred to in subsection (1) shall be— (a) not less than 600 mm in length; and (b) capable of carrying a static load of 150 kg.</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
600mm	<i>Building (Planning) Regulations</i>	57. Grab rails for bathtub	(3) A vertical grab rail of not less than 600 mm in length shall be fixed on the wall at the plug end of the bathtub adjacent to the clear floor space referred to in section 56(1).	
		71. Design of counters	(2) Leg space of— (a) not less than 400 mm and not more than 600 mm in depth ; and (b) not less than 680 mm in height above the finished floor level, shall be provided at a public information or service counter.	
		76. Push button for emergency call bell	(2) The push button shall be installed below the vertical grab rail inside the water closet cubicle adjacent to the water closet at a height of not less than 600 mm and not more than 650 mm above the finished floor level.	
		79. Lift doors	(4) Such detection device shall be positioned at not less than 500 mm and not more than 600 mm above the floor of the lift car.	
	<i>Code of Practice for Fire Safety in Buildings 2011</i>	Section 3 – Definitions	“Element of construction” means: • any floor, beam, column, or hanger; • any loadbearing wall or loadbearing member other than a member forming the roof or part of the roof; • any required staircase including the landings and supports thereto. (Note: Any raised flooring system at a height of not more than 600 mm from the original floor will not be considered as an element of construction . In such case, the compartment walls or other fire barriers should start from the structural floor and not just rest on the raised floor .)	
		Subsection B13 - Doors in Relation to Exits Clause B13.4	Exit door from a room or storey having an occupant capacity in excess of 3 persons should not be less than 750 mm in width . In the case of a double leaf door, no leaf of such door should be less than 600 mm in width and, where the meeting stiles are rebated, a checking device to control the closing order of the doors should be installed . Such checking device should ensure that both leaves of door are closed in the correct order and position.	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
600mm	Code of Practice for Fire Safety in Buildings 2011	Subsection C13 - Protection of Areas of Special Hazard Clause C13.3	<p>If fire barrier is not provided in accordance with Clause C13.3 (i.e. an open kitchen), the following fire safety provisions should be provided:</p> <p>(a) smoke detector(s) fitted with sounder base should be provided inside the subject flat . The alarm signal of the smoke detector(s) should be connected to the local fire services control panel of the building and should not be linked to the Fire Services Communication Centre;</p> <p>(b) smoke detector(s) should be provided at the common area outside the subject flat. The alarm signal of the smoke detector(s) should be connected to the local fire services control panel, the common fire alarm system of the building and the Fire Services Communication Centre;</p> <p>(c) sprinkler head(s) should be provided to cover the notional open kitchen area. The alarm signal of the system should be connected to the local fire services control panel, the common fire alarm system of the building and the Fire Services Communication Centre;</p> <p>(d) a full height wall having an FRR of not less than -/30/30 should be provided adjacent to the flat exit door. The width of the wall should not be less than 600mm; and</p> <p>(e) For open kitchen in premises with internal staircase(s), a barrier of not less than 450mm measured vertically downwards from the underside of the floor shall be provided . The barrier should surround the notional open kitchen area and should have an FRR of not less than -/30/- and be non-combustible complying with the requirements in Part E . If false ceilings are hung in the open kitchen, the barrier should extend not less than 450mm below the false ceilings .</p>	
	Code of Practice for Fire Safety in Buildings 2011		<p>Commentary</p> <p>The specification and location of the smoke detectors should be considered carefully when they are installed inside the flats to minimize false alarms. Also taking into account the effect of humidity, medium or low sensitivity smoke detectors are recommended to be installed in living areas and placed away from the cooking range(s) and bathroom.</p> <p>The smoke detectors and sprinklers are fire service installations designed in accordance with the Code of Practice for Minimum Fire Service Installations and Equipment and should be subject to annual inspection and certification by a registered fire service installation contractor.</p> <p>The full height wall having an FRR of not less than -/30/30 should be erected with a material that is not easily removable (e.g. reinforced concrete construction).</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
600mm	The Code of Practice on Design for Safety – External Maintenanc	2. Specific Requirements	<p>2.4 Maintenance door</p> <p>2.4.1 Maintenance door shall be of size not less than 600 mm wide by 2000 mm high . It shall be locked to avoid misuse and prevent unauthorised access.</p> <p>It shall also bear on the conspicuous part of its outside face a warning</p> <p>notice in English and Chinese in letters and characters not less than 25 mm high as follows –</p> <p>DANGER</p> <p>UNAUTHORISED ACCESS PROHIBITED</p> <p>CLOSE AND LOCK THIS DOOR</p> <p>危險</p> <p>不得擅進</p> <p>請關閉並緊鎖此門</p>	
		STATUTORY OCCUPATIONAL SAFETY REQUIREMENTS	<p>4. Where construction works (including M&R works) is undertaken and there is a risk of falling from a height of 2 m or more, the M&R access (e.g. gangways and runs), where appropriate, shall be complied with the requirements as stipulated at the Third Schedule of the Construction Sites (Safety) Regulations (Cap. 59I), including the provision of:</p> <p>(a) Top guard-rail with a height of not less than 900 mm and not more than 1150 mm and intermediate guard-rail with a height of not less than 450 mm and not more than 600 mm;</p> <p>(b) Toe-board with a height of not less than 200 mm ;</p> <p>and</p> <p>(c) Gangways and runs with a width of not less than 400 mm and for movement of materials with a width of not less than 650 mm so far as reasonably practicable .</p>	
	Practice Note for Authorized Persons APP 17	Rock Faces Building (Planning) Regulations 27 and 47	<p>For the purposes of Building (Planning) Regulation 47, only a widely-jointed (spacing over 600mm) rock face having no unfavourably oriented joints or other discontinuities or other defects will be regarded as a “massive rock face”. For slopes other than “massive rock face”, the provisions of Building (Planning) Regulation 27 will apply.</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks																																																																																																																																																						
	Manuals	Page/Table																																																																																																																																																								
600mm	Practice Note for Authorized Persons APP 111	Design of Car Parks and Loading/Unloading Facilities	<p align="center">Table 1 – Car Parks and Loading/Unloading Spaces</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Stall Dimensions for Car Parks & Loading/Unloading Bays</th> <th>Length (m)</th> <th>Width (m)</th> <th>Min. Clear Headroom (m)</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>Motorcycles</td><td>2.4 (min. 2 m)</td><td>1</td><td>2.4</td></tr> <tr><td>Private Cars and Taxis</td><td>5</td><td>2.5</td><td>2.4</td></tr> <tr><td>Coaches and Buses</td><td>12</td><td>3.5</td><td>3.8</td></tr> <tr><td>Light Goods Vehicles</td><td>7</td><td>3.5</td><td>3.6</td></tr> <tr><td>Medium/Heavy Goods Vehicles</td><td>11</td><td>3.5</td><td>4.7</td></tr> <tr><td>Container Vehicles</td><td>16</td><td>3.5</td><td>4.7</td></tr> <tr><td>Light Buses</td><td>8</td><td>3</td><td>3.3</td></tr> <tr><td>Car-parks for Persons with a Disability</td><td>5</td><td>3.5</td><td>2.4</td></tr> <tr> <th>Car Park Aisles</th> <th>Parking Angle</th> <th colspan="2">Aisle Width (m)</th> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td></td> <th>Desirable</th> <th>Minimum</th> </tr> <tr> <td rowspan="7">(a) Private Cars, and Taxis (one-way)</td> <td>0°</td> <td>3</td> <td>-</td> </tr> <tr><td>30°</td><td>3</td><td>-</td></tr> <tr><td>45°</td><td>3.6</td><td>-</td></tr> <tr><td>60°</td><td>4.2</td><td>-</td></tr> <tr><td>70°</td><td>4.7</td><td>-</td></tr> <tr><td>80°</td><td>5.3</td><td>-</td></tr> <tr><td>90°</td><td>6</td><td>5.5 (absolute min 5.0 m)</td></tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>90° (two-way aisle)</td> <td>7.5</td> <td>6.0 (absolute min 5.5 m)</td> </tr> <tr> <td rowspan="2">(b) Light Goods Vehicles (one-way)</td> <td>45°</td> <td>7</td> <td>-</td> </tr> <tr><td>90°</td><td>10</td><td>-</td></tr> <tr> <td rowspan="3">(c) Medium/Heavy Goods Vehicles (one-way)</td> <td>45°</td> <td>8</td> <td>-</td> </tr> <tr><td>90°</td><td>12</td><td>10</td></tr> <tr><td>90° (two-way aisle)</td><td>16</td><td>10</td></tr> <tr> <td rowspan="2">(d) Container Vehicles (one-way)</td> <td>45°</td> <td>11</td> <td>-</td> </tr> <tr><td>90°</td><td>16</td><td>-</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p align="center">Table 2 - Access Roads/Driveways</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th colspan="5">Driveways</th> </tr> <tr> <th colspan="2">Width for Straight Sections</th> <th>Desirable Width (m)</th> <th>Minimum Width (m)</th> <th>Absolute Min. Width (m)</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td rowspan="2">Residential Area</td> <td>One-way</td> <td>5.5</td> <td>4.0</td> <td>3.0 (private cars only)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Two-way</td> <td>7.3</td> <td>5.5</td> <td>5.0 (private cars only)</td> </tr> <tr> <td rowspan="2">Industrial Area & Area of Mixed Usage</td> <td>One-way</td> <td>6.0</td> <td>5.5</td> <td>3.5</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Two-way</td> <td>10.5</td> <td>7.3</td> <td>6.0</td> </tr> <tr> <th colspan="2">Gradient</th> <th>Desirable</th> <th>Maximum</th> <th>Absolute Maximum</th> </tr> <tr> <td rowspan="2">Straight Ramp</td> <td>For Private Cars</td> <td>1:10</td> <td>1:7</td> <td>1:6</td> </tr> <tr> <td>For Goods Vehicles</td> <td>1:10</td> <td>1:8</td> <td>-</td> </tr> <tr> <td rowspan="2">Helical</td> <td>For Private Cars</td> <td>1:12.5</td> <td>1:8</td> <td>-</td> </tr> <tr> <td>For Goods Vehicles</td> <td>1:12.5</td> <td>1:10</td> <td>-</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Vertical Clearance</td> <td>All Vehicles</td> <td colspan="3">Vertical clearances for structures over driveway and that part of pavement within 600mm of its outer edge should be 5.1 m (min.)</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Stall Dimensions for Car Parks & Loading/Unloading Bays	Length (m)	Width (m)	Min. Clear Headroom (m)	Motorcycles	2.4 (min. 2 m)	1	2.4	Private Cars and Taxis	5	2.5	2.4	Coaches and Buses	12	3.5	3.8	Light Goods Vehicles	7	3.5	3.6	Medium/Heavy Goods Vehicles	11	3.5	4.7	Container Vehicles	16	3.5	4.7	Light Buses	8	3	3.3	Car-parks for Persons with a Disability	5	3.5	2.4	Car Park Aisles	Parking Angle	Aisle Width (m)				Desirable	Minimum	(a) Private Cars, and Taxis (one-way)	0°	3	-	30°	3	-	45°	3.6	-	60°	4.2	-	70°	4.7	-	80°	5.3	-	90°	6	5.5 (absolute min 5.0 m)		90° (two-way aisle)	7.5	6.0 (absolute min 5.5 m)	(b) Light Goods Vehicles (one-way)	45°	7	-	90°	10	-	(c) Medium/Heavy Goods Vehicles (one-way)	45°	8	-	90°	12	10	90° (two-way aisle)	16	10	(d) Container Vehicles (one-way)	45°	11	-	90°	16	-	Driveways					Width for Straight Sections		Desirable Width (m)	Minimum Width (m)	Absolute Min. Width (m)	Residential Area	One-way	5.5	4.0	3.0 (private cars only)	Two-way	7.3	5.5	5.0 (private cars only)	Industrial Area & Area of Mixed Usage	One-way	6.0	5.5	3.5	Two-way	10.5	7.3	6.0	Gradient		Desirable	Maximum	Absolute Maximum	Straight Ramp	For Private Cars	1:10	1:7	1:6	For Goods Vehicles	1:10	1:8	-	Helical	For Private Cars	1:12.5	1:8	-	For Goods Vehicles	1:12.5	1:10	-	Vertical Clearance	All Vehicles	Vertical clearances for structures over driveway and that part of pavement within 600mm of its outer edge should be 5.1 m (min.)			
		Stall Dimensions for Car Parks & Loading/Unloading Bays	Length (m)	Width (m)	Min. Clear Headroom (m)																																																																																																																																																					
Motorcycles	2.4 (min. 2 m)	1	2.4																																																																																																																																																							
Private Cars and Taxis	5	2.5	2.4																																																																																																																																																							
Coaches and Buses	12	3.5	3.8																																																																																																																																																							
Light Goods Vehicles	7	3.5	3.6																																																																																																																																																							
Medium/Heavy Goods Vehicles	11	3.5	4.7																																																																																																																																																							
Container Vehicles	16	3.5	4.7																																																																																																																																																							
Light Buses	8	3	3.3																																																																																																																																																							
Car-parks for Persons with a Disability	5	3.5	2.4																																																																																																																																																							
Car Park Aisles	Parking Angle	Aisle Width (m)																																																																																																																																																								
		Desirable	Minimum																																																																																																																																																							
(a) Private Cars, and Taxis (one-way)	0°	3	-																																																																																																																																																							
	30°	3	-																																																																																																																																																							
	45°	3.6	-																																																																																																																																																							
	60°	4.2	-																																																																																																																																																							
	70°	4.7	-																																																																																																																																																							
	80°	5.3	-																																																																																																																																																							
	90°	6	5.5 (absolute min 5.0 m)																																																																																																																																																							
	90° (two-way aisle)	7.5	6.0 (absolute min 5.5 m)																																																																																																																																																							
(b) Light Goods Vehicles (one-way)	45°	7	-																																																																																																																																																							
	90°	10	-																																																																																																																																																							
(c) Medium/Heavy Goods Vehicles (one-way)	45°	8	-																																																																																																																																																							
	90°	12	10																																																																																																																																																							
	90° (two-way aisle)	16	10																																																																																																																																																							
(d) Container Vehicles (one-way)	45°	11	-																																																																																																																																																							
	90°	16	-																																																																																																																																																							
Driveways																																																																																																																																																										
Width for Straight Sections		Desirable Width (m)	Minimum Width (m)	Absolute Min. Width (m)																																																																																																																																																						
Residential Area	One-way	5.5	4.0	3.0 (private cars only)																																																																																																																																																						
	Two-way	7.3	5.5	5.0 (private cars only)																																																																																																																																																						
Industrial Area & Area of Mixed Usage	One-way	6.0	5.5	3.5																																																																																																																																																						
	Two-way	10.5	7.3	6.0																																																																																																																																																						
Gradient		Desirable	Maximum	Absolute Maximum																																																																																																																																																						
Straight Ramp	For Private Cars	1:10	1:7	1:6																																																																																																																																																						
	For Goods Vehicles	1:10	1:8	-																																																																																																																																																						
Helical	For Private Cars	1:12.5	1:8	-																																																																																																																																																						
	For Goods Vehicles	1:12.5	1:10	-																																																																																																																																																						
Vertical Clearance	All Vehicles	Vertical clearances for structures over driveway and that part of pavement within 600mm of its outer edge should be 5.1 m (min.)																																																																																																																																																								

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks																																																																		
	Manuals	Page/Table																																																																				
600mm	Practice Note for Authorized Persons APP 111	<table border="1"> <tr> <td>Horizontal Clearance</td> <td>All Vehicles</td> <td colspan="2">Horizontal clearance should be 500 mm. If impracticable, clearance from railing and posts for signs should not be less than 200 mm.</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="4">Widening of Access Roads/Driveways on Bends</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Width of Access Roads/ Driveways</td> <td></td> <td>Permitted Radius of Curve at Centre Line</td> <td>Min. Widening Required. (m)</td> </tr> <tr> <td rowspan="3">6 m or less</td> <td></td> <td>Less than 18 m</td> <td>1.2</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>18 m to 24 m inclusive</td> <td>1.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Over 24 m</td> <td>0.6</td> </tr> <tr> <td rowspan="3">More than 6 m</td> <td></td> <td>Less than 18 m</td> <td>1.0</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>18 m to 24 m inclusive</td> <td>0.6</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td>Over 24 m</td> <td>0.3</td> </tr> </table> <p style="text-align: center;">Table 3 - Ramps in Multi-Storey Car Park (for Private cars and Taxis)</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <th colspan="4">Ramps in Multi-storey Car Parks (for Private cars and Taxis)</th> </tr> <tr> <th rowspan="3">Min. Width (between kerbs)</th> <th colspan="2"></th> <th>Straight Ramps</th> <th>Helical Ramps</th> </tr> <tr> <td>One-way</td> <td></td> <td>3.0 m</td> <td>3.65 m</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Two-way (with no central kerb)</td> <td></td> <td>6.0 m (min. 5.5 m)</td> <td>-</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Max. Gradient</td> <td colspan="3">See "Gradient" in "Access Roads/Driveways"</td> </tr> <tr> <td rowspan="2">Horizontal Clearance from structures</td> <td>For Straight Ramps</td> <td colspan="2">300 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>For Helical Ramps</td> <td colspan="2">600 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td rowspan="2">Minimum Curve Radius</td> <td>For Straight Ramps</td> <td colspan="2">5.5 m (min. inner radius at bends)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>For Helical Ramps (one-way)</td> <td colspan="2">9.0 m (min. outer radius)</td> </tr> </table>	Horizontal Clearance	All Vehicles	Horizontal clearance should be 500 mm. If impracticable, clearance from railing and posts for signs should not be less than 200 mm.		Widening of Access Roads/Driveways on Bends				Width of Access Roads/ Driveways		Permitted Radius of Curve at Centre Line	Min. Widening Required. (m)	6 m or less		Less than 18 m	1.2		18 m to 24 m inclusive	1.0		Over 24 m	0.6	More than 6 m		Less than 18 m	1.0		18 m to 24 m inclusive	0.6		Over 24 m	0.3	Ramps in Multi-storey Car Parks (for Private cars and Taxis)				Min. Width (between kerbs)			Straight Ramps	Helical Ramps	One-way		3.0 m	3.65 m	Two-way (with no central kerb)		6.0 m (min. 5.5 m)	-	Max. Gradient	See "Gradient" in "Access Roads/Driveways"			Horizontal Clearance from structures	For Straight Ramps	300 mm		For Helical Ramps	600 mm		Minimum Curve Radius	For Straight Ramps	5.5 m (min. inner radius at bends)		For Helical Ramps (one-way)	9.0 m (min. outer radius)		
	Horizontal Clearance	All Vehicles	Horizontal clearance should be 500 mm. If impracticable, clearance from railing and posts for signs should not be less than 200 mm.																																																																			
Widening of Access Roads/Driveways on Bends																																																																						
Width of Access Roads/ Driveways		Permitted Radius of Curve at Centre Line	Min. Widening Required. (m)																																																																			
6 m or less		Less than 18 m	1.2																																																																			
		18 m to 24 m inclusive	1.0																																																																			
		Over 24 m	0.6																																																																			
More than 6 m		Less than 18 m	1.0																																																																			
		18 m to 24 m inclusive	0.6																																																																			
		Over 24 m	0.3																																																																			
Ramps in Multi-storey Car Parks (for Private cars and Taxis)																																																																						
Min. Width (between kerbs)			Straight Ramps	Helical Ramps																																																																		
	One-way		3.0 m	3.65 m																																																																		
	Two-way (with no central kerb)		6.0 m (min. 5.5 m)	-																																																																		
Max. Gradient	See "Gradient" in "Access Roads/Driveways"																																																																					
Horizontal Clearance from structures	For Straight Ramps	300 mm																																																																				
	For Helical Ramps	600 mm																																																																				
Minimum Curve Radius	For Straight Ramps	5.5 m (min. inner radius at bends)																																																																				
	For Helical Ramps (one-way)	9.0 m (min. outer radius)																																																																				
	Practice Note for Authorized Persons APP 126	<p>General Requirements</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. No part of a signboard shall obstruct or reduce the required width of the means of escape, emergency vehicular access and means of access for firefighting and rescue for any building. 2. No part of a signboard shall obstruct or reduce the required natural lighting and ventilation or open space provided to any building . 3. If a signboard is within 1 m of the outer edge of a footpath, or projects over a carriageway, it shall have a clear space of not less than 5.8 m beneath every part of the signboard . 4. If a signboard projects over a footpath, it shall have a clear space of not less than 3.5 m beneath every part of the signboard , provided that if the signboard projects not more than 600 mm over a footpath , it shall have a clear space of not less than 2.5 m beneath every part of it . 5. If a signboard projects over a tramway, it shall have a clear space of not less than 7 m beneath every part of it . 6. No portion of a signboard shall be within 1.5 m, measured horizontally, of a line drawn vertically from a point in the centre line of a street nearest to such portion of the signboard. Where there is another signboard opposite to it, there shall have a clear space of not less than 3 m between them measured horizontally. 	1 A wall signboard means a signboard fixed to the external wall of a building permitted under Appendix B.																																																																			

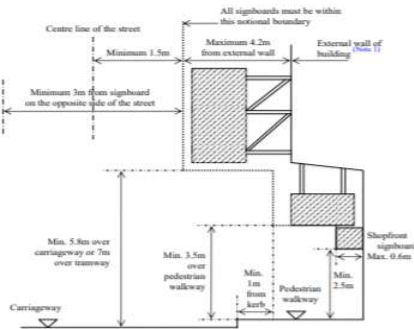
DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
600mm	Practice Note for Authorized Persons APP 126	Erection of Signboards Positional and Dimensional Requirements for Signboards Appendix B	<p>7. Where any portion of a signboard projects more than 600 mm from the external wall 1 of a building to which it is attached, any portion of it including its guy wires, supporting frames and lateral struts shall have a minimum distance of 2.4 m from any part of any adjacent projecting signboard, measured laterally and throughout the height of the building. No portion of such signboard including its guy wires, supporting frames and lateral struts shall be within a distance of less than 1.2m from the common site boundary of any adjoining lot.</p> <p>8. No signboard shall obstruct or affect any trees.</p> <p>9. Where a building has been set back for the purpose of compliance with the Sustainable Building Design Guidelines stipulated in PNAP APP-152, no signboard projecting more than 600mm from the external wall shall be erected within the setback area up to a level of 15m above the street level.</p> <p>Wall Signboard 10. For the purpose of this Appendix, a wall signboard means a signboard that is fixed to the external wall 1 of a building and no part of which projects more than 600 mm from the wall .</p> <p>11. A wall signboard at the head of a shopfront shall be structurally independent from any roller shutter or air-conditioning unit and any space enclosed by such signboard should not be used for storage.</p> <p>Projecting Signboard 12. For the purpose of this Appendix, a projecting signboard means a signboard projecting more than 600 mm from the external wall 1 of a building to which it attached.</p> <p>13. No portion of a projecting signboard shall project more than 4.2 m from the external wall.</p> <p>14. Subject to paragraph 15 below, a projecting signboard shall be contained within a virtual prism with the following measurement:- (a) the surface area of the vertical planar of the prism perpendicular to the wall shall not be more than 40 m² ; and (b) the horizontal width of the prism shall not be more than 600 mm. Some illustrations of calculating the rectangular planar area of the virtual prism are shown in Annex 1.</p> <p>15. Where there are other projecting signboards in the same vertical plane:- (a) the aggregate surface area of the vertical planar of all the virtual prisms within which they are contained shall not be more than 40 m² ; and (b) the aggregate length of the height of all the virtual prisms shall not be more than 20 m. These requirements are illustrated in Annex 2.</p>	2 A projecting signboard means a signboard fixed to the external wall of a building and projecting more than 600mm from the wall permitted under Appendix B.

DATA	Related Requisitions		Descriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
	<p>Practice Note for Authorized Persons APP 126</p> <p>600mm</p>	<p>Annex 1 to Appendix B (PNAP APP-126)</p> <p>Diagram Showing Virtual Prism of Signboards Rectangular Planar Area (Display Area), Max. 2.40m² Thickness of Signboard, Max. 0.100m</p> <p>Example 1: Elevation showing a rectangular signboard with a supporting structure. Labels include 'External wall', 'Supporting structure', and 'Signboard'. Text: 'Area within dotted line - Rectangular planar area'.</p> <p>Example 2: Elevation showing a curved signboard with a supporting structure. Labels include 'External wall', 'Supporting structure', and 'Signboard'. Text: 'Area within dotted line - Rectangular planar area'.</p> <p>Example 3: Elevation showing a signboard with a supporting structure. Labels include 'External wall', 'Supporting structure', and 'Signboard'. Text: 'Area within dotted line - Rectangular planar area'.</p>	<p>Signboard on the Roof 18. No portion of a signboard erected on the roof of a building shall be within a distance of 1.5m from the inside face of the roof parapet or curb. Such set back area shall be accessible from other part of the roof. Some of the above requirements are diagrammatically shown in Annex 3.</p> <p>Diagram Showing Computation of Planar Area Planar areas are demarcated by dotted lines</p> <p>Area 1 + Area 2 + Area 3 \leq 40m² $a + b + c \leq$ 20m</p>	<p>1 For the avoidance of doubt, projections under Regulation 7 of the Building (Planning) Regulations; canopies; the outer walls of projecting structures such as balconies and verandahs outside site boundaries; air-conditioning platforms under paragraph 3(iii) of PNAP APP-150; and curtain walls under paragraph 7 of PNAP APP-2 are not regarded as the external</p> <p>f a g for es of dix.</p>
		<p>Annex 2 to Appendix B (PNAP APP-126)</p> <p>PROJECTION and CLEARANCE of SIGNBOARDS 招牌的伸延及高度</p>		

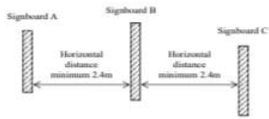
DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
600mm	Practice Note for Authorized Persons APP 152	Sustainable Building Design Guidelines	<p>Building Setback</p> <p>7. In order to improve air ventilation, enhance the environmental quality at pedestrian level and mitigate street canyon effect , buildings fronting a street less than 15m wide should be set back to comply with one of the following requirements :</p> <p>(a) For maintaining a ventilation corridor with minimum section of 15m x 15m, no part of the building up to a level of 15m above the street level should be within 7.5m from the centreline of the street as shown in Figures C1 and C2 of Appendix C . Where level of a street varies, the minimum sectional area should be kept along the full frontage following the profile of the street.</p> <p>(b) Where a cross-ventilated communal podium garden with a clear height of not less than 4.5m is provided , no part of the building up to a level of 15m above the street level, should protrude above the 45° inclined plane, the base of which is placed at street level at the site boundary line on the opposite side of the street as shown in Figures C3 and C4 of Appendix C. Typical examples on the application of building setback requirements are given in Figures C5 to C9 of Appendix C.</p>	
		<p>2 The setback area at ground level under the footprint of such structures or the covered areas under the canopy may be exempted from GFA calculation if it is designated as common parts accessible by occupants of the building and without any commercial activities .</p> <p>3 Height of the building in this context is measured from the mean level of the street on which the building abuts to the mean height of the roof over the highest usable floor space in the building</p>	<p>8. In determining the compliance with the setback requirement, the BA may take into account the following factors:</p> <p>(a) Structures higher than 15m above the street level may be allowed to build over the setback area² . If the setback area is uncovered, a canopy that complied with regulation 10 of the B(P)R may be permitted;</p> <p>(b) Minor projecting features and signboards projecting not more than 600mm from the external walls and at a clear height of not less than 2.5m above the street level; and single-storey footbridges across the setback area may also be permitted;</p> <p>(c) Columns supporting the building above may be permitted with in the setback areas subject to requirements as shown in Figure C2 of Appendix C; and</p> <p>(d) The setback area should be properly landscaped and paved, and be open without any permanent building structures other than landscaped features, perforated balustrades, perforated boundary walls and structural columns.</p> <p>9. Buildings may be exempted from whole or parts of the building setback requirement with reference to a street where its height³ is less than 2 times the mean width of the street</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks										
	Manuals	Page/Table												
<p style="color: red; font-weight: bold; font-size: 1.2em;">600mm</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">Practice Note for Authorized Persons APP 155</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">Validation Scheme for Unauthorised Signboards</p>	<p style="text-align: right;">Appendix A (PNAP APP-155)</p> <p>Prescribed Building or Building Works Relating to Section 39C(1A) of the Building Ordinance Listed in Part 3 of Schedule 3 of the B(MW)R:</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td rowspan="3">1. Unauthorised projecting signboard (Item 1 in Part 3 of Schedule 3 of B(MW)R)</td> <td colspan="3">Corresponding Minor Works Items listed in Part 3 of Schedule 1:</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1.20</td> <td>2.18</td> <td>3.14</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="3"> Not consist of stone No additional load to cantilevered slab Not involve alteration of structural elements Display area > 10 m² & ≤ 20m² Display area ≤ 10m² Display area ≤ 1m² Projection ≤ 4.2m Projection ≤ 1m Thickness ≤ 600mm Thickness ≤ 300mm — — Any part of signboard ≤ 6m from ground </td> </tr> </table>	1. Unauthorised projecting signboard (Item 1 in Part 3 of Schedule 3 of B(MW)R)	Corresponding Minor Works Items listed in Part 3 of Schedule 1:			1.20	2.18	3.14	Not consist of stone No additional load to cantilevered slab Not involve alteration of structural elements Display area > 10 m ² & ≤ 20m ² Display area ≤ 10m ² Display area ≤ 1m ² Projection ≤ 4.2m Projection ≤ 1m Thickness ≤ 600mm Thickness ≤ 300mm — — Any part of signboard ≤ 6m from ground			
			1. Unauthorised projecting signboard (Item 1 in Part 3 of Schedule 3 of B(MW)R)		Corresponding Minor Works Items listed in Part 3 of Schedule 1:									
1.20	2.18	3.14												
Not consist of stone No additional load to cantilevered slab Not involve alteration of structural elements Display area > 10 m ² & ≤ 20m ² Display area ≤ 10m ² Display area ≤ 1m ² Projection ≤ 4.2m Projection ≤ 1m Thickness ≤ 600mm Thickness ≤ 300mm — — Any part of signboard ≤ 6m from ground														
<table border="1"> <tr> <td rowspan="3">2. Unauthorised wall signboard (including unauthorised shopfront signboard) (Item 2 in Part 3 of Schedule 3 of B(MW)R)</td> <td colspan="3">Corresponding Minor Works Items listed in Part 3 of Schedule 1:</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1.22</td> <td>2.19</td> <td>3.17</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="3"> No additional load to cantilevered slab Not involve alteration of structural elements Display area with LED display system: > 5m² & ≤ 20m² ≤ 5m² — Display area without LED display system: > 10m² & ≤ 40m² ≤ 10m² ≤ 5m² Not consist of stone if any part of signboard > 6m from ground any part of signboard ≤ 6m from ground </td> </tr> </table>	2. Unauthorised wall signboard (including unauthorised shopfront signboard) (Item 2 in Part 3 of Schedule 3 of B(MW)R)	Corresponding Minor Works Items listed in Part 3 of Schedule 1:			1.22	2.19	3.17	No additional load to cantilevered slab Not involve alteration of structural elements Display area with LED display system: > 5m ² & ≤ 20m ² ≤ 5m ² — Display area without LED display system: > 10m ² & ≤ 40m ² ≤ 10m ² ≤ 5m ² Not consist of stone if any part of signboard > 6m from ground any part of signboard ≤ 6m from ground						
2. Unauthorised wall signboard (including unauthorised shopfront signboard) (Item 2 in Part 3 of Schedule 3 of B(MW)R)		Corresponding Minor Works Items listed in Part 3 of Schedule 1:												
		1.22	2.19	3.17										
	No additional load to cantilevered slab Not involve alteration of structural elements Display area with LED display system: > 5m ² & ≤ 20m ² ≤ 5m ² — Display area without LED display system: > 10m ² & ≤ 40m ² ≤ 10m ² ≤ 5m ² Not consist of stone if any part of signboard > 6m from ground any part of signboard ≤ 6m from ground													
<table border="1"> <tr> <td rowspan="2">3. Unauthorised signboard on roof of a building (Item 3 in Part 3 of Schedule 3 of B(MW)R)</td> <td colspan="3">Corresponding Minor Works Item 1.21 listed in Part 3 of Schedule 1</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="3"> Not consist of stone No additional load to cantilevered slab Not involve alteration of structural elements Display area ≤ 20m² No part projects beyond external wall of the building Thickness ≤ 600mm Any part of signboard ≤ 6m from roof level </td> </tr> </table>	3. Unauthorised signboard on roof of a building (Item 3 in Part 3 of Schedule 3 of B(MW)R)	Corresponding Minor Works Item 1.21 listed in Part 3 of Schedule 1			Not consist of stone No additional load to cantilevered slab Not involve alteration of structural elements Display area ≤ 20m ² No part projects beyond external wall of the building Thickness ≤ 600mm Any part of signboard ≤ 6m from roof level									
3. Unauthorised signboard on roof of a building (Item 3 in Part 3 of Schedule 3 of B(MW)R)		Corresponding Minor Works Item 1.21 listed in Part 3 of Schedule 1												
	Not consist of stone No additional load to cantilevered slab Not involve alteration of structural elements Display area ≤ 20m ² No part projects beyond external wall of the building Thickness ≤ 600mm Any part of signboard ≤ 6m from roof level													
<table border="1"> <tr> <td rowspan="3">4. Unauthorised outdoor signboard fixed on-grade (other than construction of spread footing) (Item 4 in Part 3 of Schedule 3 of B(MW)R)</td> <td colspan="3">Corresponding Minor Works Items listed in Part 3 of Schedule 1:</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1.23</td> <td colspan="2">2.21</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="3"> Display area ≤ 20m² Display area ≤ 10m² Thickness ≤ 600mm Any part of signboard ≤ 6m from ground Any part of signboard ≤ 2m from ground </td> </tr> </table>	4. Unauthorised outdoor signboard fixed on-grade (other than construction of spread footing) (Item 4 in Part 3 of Schedule 3 of B(MW)R)	Corresponding Minor Works Items listed in Part 3 of Schedule 1:			1.23	2.21		Display area ≤ 20m ² Display area ≤ 10m ² Thickness ≤ 600mm Any part of signboard ≤ 6m from ground Any part of signboard ≤ 2m from ground						
4. Unauthorised outdoor signboard fixed on-grade (other than construction of spread footing) (Item 4 in Part 3 of Schedule 3 of B(MW)R)		Corresponding Minor Works Items listed in Part 3 of Schedule 1:												
		1.23	2.21											
	Display area ≤ 20m ² Display area ≤ 10m ² Thickness ≤ 600mm Any part of signboard ≤ 6m from ground Any part of signboard ≤ 2m from ground													
<table border="1"> <tr> <td rowspan="2">5. Unauthorised outdoor signboard with a spread footing (Item 5 in Part 3 of Schedule 3 of B(MW)R)</td> <td colspan="3">Corresponding Minor Works Item 2.22 listed in Part 3 of Schedule 1</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="3"> Display area ≤ 1m² Thickness ≤ 300mm Any part of signboard ≤ 3m from ground Depth of excavation for footing construction ≤ 500mm Not involve excavation within scheduled areas No. 1 or 3 </td> </tr> </table>	5. Unauthorised outdoor signboard with a spread footing (Item 5 in Part 3 of Schedule 3 of B(MW)R)	Corresponding Minor Works Item 2.22 listed in Part 3 of Schedule 1			Display area ≤ 1m ² Thickness ≤ 300mm Any part of signboard ≤ 3m from ground Depth of excavation for footing construction ≤ 500mm Not involve excavation within scheduled areas No. 1 or 3									
5. Unauthorised outdoor signboard with a spread footing (Item 5 in Part 3 of Schedule 3 of B(MW)R)		Corresponding Minor Works Item 2.22 listed in Part 3 of Schedule 1												
	Display area ≤ 1m ² Thickness ≤ 300mm Any part of signboard ≤ 3m from ground Depth of excavation for footing construction ≤ 500mm Not involve excavation within scheduled areas No. 1 or 3													
<table border="1"> <tr> <td rowspan="2">6. Unauthorised signboard on or hung underneath the soffit of a balcony or canopy (other than a cantilevered slab) (Item 6 in Part 3 of Schedule 3 of B(MW)R)</td> <td colspan="3">Corresponding Minor Works Item 2.20 listed in Part 3 of Schedule 1</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="3"> Not consist of stone Display area ≤ 2m² No part projects beyond balcony or canopy Height ≤ 600mm Thickness ≤ 100mm </td> </tr> </table>	6. Unauthorised signboard on or hung underneath the soffit of a balcony or canopy (other than a cantilevered slab) (Item 6 in Part 3 of Schedule 3 of B(MW)R)	Corresponding Minor Works Item 2.20 listed in Part 3 of Schedule 1			Not consist of stone Display area ≤ 2m ² No part projects beyond balcony or canopy Height ≤ 600mm Thickness ≤ 100mm									
6. Unauthorised signboard on or hung underneath the soffit of a balcony or canopy (other than a cantilevered slab) (Item 6 in Part 3 of Schedule 3 of B(MW)R)		Corresponding Minor Works Item 2.20 listed in Part 3 of Schedule 1												
	Not consist of stone Display area ≤ 2m ² No part projects beyond balcony or canopy Height ≤ 600mm Thickness ≤ 100mm													

Positional requirements of unauthorised signboards eligible for signboard validation



Note 1: Please refer to PNAP APP-126 for interpretation of external wall for the purpose of signboards

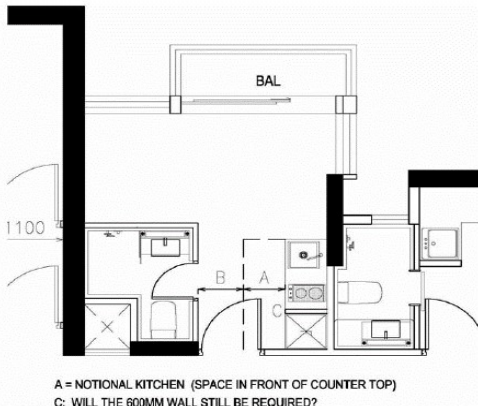


Lateral spacing between projecting signboards above Ground Floor

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
600mm	APSEC Discussion Forum on 3 August 2012	<p>QUESTIONS : FRR for Raised Floor APP-83: it has been discussed in previous Forum and we have been advised that <i>raised floor higher than 600 mm may be exempted from FRR requirement if it satisfies certain F.S. requirements</i> although consideration by F.S. Committee would be required; response from fellow members reflects the contrary; please advise.</p>	<p>BD reconfirmed that <i>raised floor systems higher than 600mm might be accepted without adequate FRR subject to submission of justification for the raised floor system and provision of FSIs to the satisfaction of the FSD.</i> (Submision of a fire engineering report to the FS Committee was not necessary unless the project proponent intended to adopt fire engineering approach).</p>	
600mm	2012 APSEC Discussion Forum on 26 October 2012	<p>QUESTIONS : Openable Top Hung Window Usually in office building, especially in curtain wall building, <i>the window will be designed to open below the 1 m sill line for prescribed window to avoid blocking the view of the seated occupant inside the building . If the 600 mm measurement for openable window is taken at the 1 m level, the actual maximum opening distance would be larger than 600 mm . BD is requested to consider acceptance of the 600 mm measurement in the case of office building to be taken at the bottom of the window as previously discussed .</i> As an extension of this issue, BD is requested to consider acceptance of provision of ventilators of equivalent window area in office building in satisfying the ventilation requirement.</p>	<p>BD advised that <i>the deemed sill level of 1m in B(P)R 31(3)(b) should be observed in the calculation of the glazing areas and openable areas required under B(P)R 30(2)(a)(i) and (ii).</i> That said, <i>BD might consider any request for measuring the openable window areas at locations other than the 1m sill level for office buildings upon receipt of full and satisfactory substantiations of the circumstances of individual cases (for example, provision of more openable windows than the prescribed openable window areas, installation of ventilators with quantitative substantiation on their equivalent performance / effective-ness in providing natural ventilation as an openable window of certain areas, etc.).</i></p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
600mm	2015 APSEC Discussion Forum on 20 March 2015	<p>QUESTIONS: Pipe Ducts and Essential E&M Ducts Located at Staircase According to PNAP APP-93, pipe ducts shall be accessible from the common parts of the building. An unobstructed working space of not less than 700mm in front of the pipes shall be provided for maintenance and repair of the pipeworks.</p> <p>The doors or panels providing access to the pipe ducts shall not be less than 600mm wide by 2000mm high .</p> <p>There are precedents that pipe ducts located at the staircase can be exempted from GFA calculations, given that they fulfill the above mentioned requirements. However, there are recent cases rejected that the access panels or doors should be opened at landings, and the same also apply to other essential E&M ducts.</p>	The BD advised that pipe ducts for building services complying with Code of Practice for Fire Safety in Building 2011 (FS Code) Clause C9.3(d) but requiring maintenance and repair should not be provided in such location that would rely on access from a flight of stairs .	
	2015 APSEC Discussion Forum on 29 May 2015	<p>QUESTIONS : Double-leaf entrance doors of domestic flats (Item raised by AAP) According to Clause B13.4 of FS Code, no leaf of a double leaf door should be less than 600mm in width. However, for some domestic flats provided with double-leaf entrance doors, is it acceptable to have the width of a leaf be less than 600mm if it is normally closed and not used with the width of other leaf comply with the requirement of a single leaf door?</p>	The BD advised that double leaf entrance door at residential flats with the smaller leave less than 600mm wide had long been acceptable in many projects . As long as the smaller door leaf is not used for daily opening but for the transportation of large furniture in rare occasions, Clause B13.4 of the FS Code should not apply.	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
	<p>2016 APSEC Discussion Forum on 15 January 2016</p>	<p>QUESTIONS : Open Kitchen We observed that BD has recently considered the arrangement where open kitchen countertop is parallel to the route towards unit's entrance door is not acceptable when the space between the countertop and the wall is like a corridor. We also understand that the idea of 'notional kitchen area' was brought up in discussions with BS. We hope the following guidelines to facilitate the design and submission can be provided: Notional Kitchen Area Notional kitchen area – what is the acceptable minimum dimension for such notional kitchen area?</p>	<p>1. BD explained that the current requirements in the FS Code for open kitchens, namely wall by the stove, sprinkler, smoke detector alarms, management undertaking, etc . were all derived from the experience gained in the many FS assessment (Fire Engineering) reports for open kitchen designs. 2. The purpose of the “wall” mentioned in Clause C13.4(d) of the current FS Code was to shield the evacuees from radiant heat of stove fires, allowing the necessary pause of evacuees to open the door (and gate) without being seriously charred. This wall would be essential unless the stove was placed sufficiently far from the exit . From the advice of the Technical Committee on the various open kitchen layouts presented and an expert's advice on the effect of radiant heat flux to the evacuees at the exit door, the minimum distance for a sprinkler controlled household stove fire without shielding by walls should be 2m measured from the nearest corner of the stove to the door knob when the exit door was in closed position . 3. The following two phenomena recently found in some open kitchen designs had posed threat to fire safety and undermined the relevant standards as stipulated in the Code: a) The “wall” though provided but at locations not performing the intended shielding function for the exit and the stove was less than 2m from the exit door (considered not meeting code-compliant equivalent standard), and</p>	
		<p>A) Minimum remaining width from A to wall? (B) When sufficient space is provided, will the 600mm wall be still required? (C)</p>	<p>b) The design of open kitchens in small studio flats which a very congested environment would be expected (considered in such case the stove could be very near to main circulation routes or storage of combustibles, irrespective of (i) whether the wall was performing the intended shielding effect for the exit and (ii) location of the stove was more or less than 2m from the exit or not, therefore a highly undesirable scenario not specifically addressed by the Code).</p>	


DATA	Related Requisitions		Descriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
<p>600mm</p>  <p>A = NOTIONAL KITCHEN (SPACE IN FRONT OF COUNTER TOP) C: WILL THE 600MM WALL STILL BE REQUIRED?</p>			<p>4. <i>The demarcation of notional kitchen area as proposed in the meeting might help but would not significantly reduce the risks mentioned in para. 3. Scenario 3(a) would be regarded as a contravention. ew proposals would not be accepted. If such design as insisted, additional compensatory measures on p of the current code requirements might be necessary for consideration on case basis, and by the re Safety Committee (FSC) if necessary. Scenario 3(b) with the provision of effective shield all or sufficient distance between door and stove ould be regarded as code-compliant but undesirable. Ps were advised to consider on a voluntary basis a voice of safer stove or other compensatory easures for such flats.</i></p> <p>BD invited members to view from the internet how the intervention of water could aggravate a fire involving cooking oil to appreciate the fire risk involved under sprinkler control.</p>	
<p>2016 APSEC Discussion Forum on 18 March 2016</p>	<p>QUESTIONS : Open Kitchen Smoke Detector Location Under Clause 13.4(e) of the FS Code, for open kitchen in premises with internal staircase(s), a barrier of not less than 450mm measured vertically downwards from the underside of the floor shall be provided. The barrier should surround the notional open kitchen area and should have an FRR of not less than -/30/- and be non-combustible complying with the requirement</p>		<p>The effect of the smoke barrier should have been thoroughly considered during the review of the FS Code by the Technical Committee. Notwithstanding the above, BD explained that one of the consideration of not putting the smoke detectors in the notional kitchen areas was to avoid false alarms. On the other hand, the 450mm vertical barrier would help trap smoke thus speed up the activation of the sprinkler in the notional kitchen area. After the smoke reservoir formed by the barrier was filled, overspill of smoke from the notional kitchen area would also trigger the smoke alarms.</p> <p>The requirement of 600mm vertical barriers (screen walls) next to exit doors was also discussed. BD advised that the 600mm barriers were required for protecting the evacuees from radiant heat generated from the stove when they pause to open the escape doors. It should be an independent consideration of whether there was a nominal passage between the stove and the exit door. The concern should be the need to screen evacuees from radiant heat generated by stove fire.</p>	

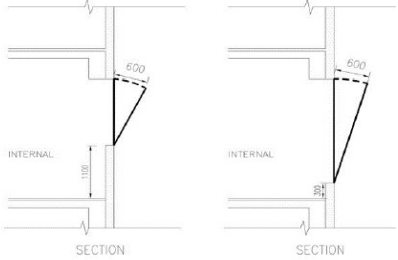
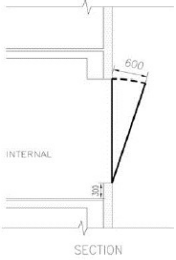
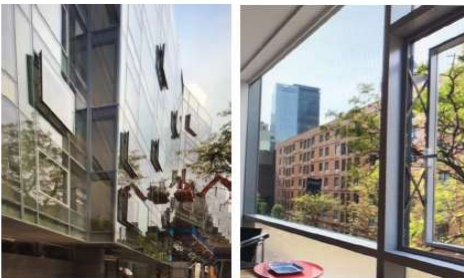
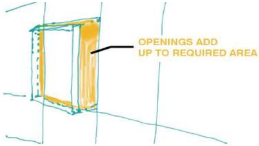
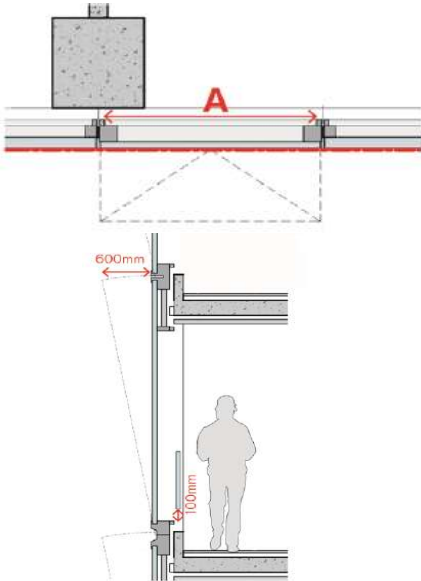
DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
600mm	2016 APSEC Discussion Forum on 18 March 2016	<p>in Part E. <i>If false ceilings are hung in the open kitchen, the barrier should extend not less than 450mm below the false ceilings. For units with an open kitchen, the sprinkler is usually installed within the "notional kitchen area" while the smoke detector is usually installed at the living area. If 450mm smoke barrier is installed to surround the notional kitchen area, smoke would be trapped at the kitchen and would delay the action of the smoke detector</i>. Would BD please advise if this arrangement is acceptable (to both BD and FSD)?</p>		
	2016 APSEC Discussion Forum on 18 March 2016	<p>QUESTIONS : <i>Maintenance Catwalks and Cat Ladders Please clarify whether approval and consent is required for maintenance catwalks and cat ladders in the ceiling of plant-rooms, bus terminus, car parks, auditorium, sports halls etc. & for maintenance catwalks sitting on low plinths (not more than 600mm tall) on roof</i>. Some reference catwalk details are enclosed for your easy reference.</p>	<p>BD advised that in general, approval and consent were required for structural works of all steel platforms, catwalks shown on GBPs. However, <i>cat ladders in inaccessible areas for public could be shown in GBP only</i>.</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
600mm	2016 APSEC Discussion Forum on 27 May 2016	<p>QUESTION : Protection of Public/Residents around Buildings (a) Canopies under para. 3(j) of PNAP APP-19 According to para. 3(j) of PNAP APP-19, canopies within the site boundary projecting not more than 2m over the entrance to a building need not be counted for SC and plot ratio (P.R.). Please clarify if such a canopy may also be applied to a G/F retail shop, which is set back from the site boundary. (b) Horizontal Screen under para. 20 of PNAP APP-42</p> <p>According to para. 20 of PNAP APP-42, horizontal screens may be permitted in any open areas frequently used by occupants at ground floor or podium floor; or roof garden/ play areas at podium floor around the perimeter of a domestic tower (apparently within site boundary). As it does not specify the use of the building at G/F, so we understand that the use as shop at G/F warrants permission to have such horizontal screen installed. However, in the Chinese version, it is stated that</p>	<p>(a) Para. 6 of PNAP APP-19 described the principle that areas covered by projecting features forming shelters capable of functional use should be included in GFA calculations even the concerned width to clear height ratio was not less than 1:8 . Only canopies within site projecting not more than 2m over an entrance of a building could be disregarded from SC and GFA calculations . Canopies over the shopfront or the entrance of a retail shop should be included in SC and GFA calculations . However, special circumstances demonstrating public interest or innovative designs which were unlikely</p> <p>(b) In general, roofs of covered walkways connecting domestic buildings would be regarded as horizontal screens. Only horizontal screen serving a genuine protection to the passageway for the enjoyment of the residents of domestic buildings at the open areas at ground floor or podium floor not forming part of any commercial premises could be disregarded from GFA calculation.</p> <p>(c) Para. 8 of PNAP APP-152 specified that the setback area should be without any permanent building structures other than landscaped features, perforated balustrades, perforated boundary walls and structural columns. Minor projecting features and signboard projecting not more than 600mm from the external walls and at a clear height of not less than 2.5m above the street level ; and single storey footbridges across the setback area might also be permitted . In this connection, a horizontal screen that could meet the above requirements might be permitted within the building setback area under PNAP APP-152.</p>	
600mm	2016 APSEC Discussion Forum on 27 May 2016			

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
		<p>“在位於住用樓宇的地面層及平台樓層經常被使用的露天地方或位於天台花園/平台塔樓周邊的遊戲場地.....”</p> <p>Hence, it apparently qualifies that the open areas at ground floor or podium floor should only be applied to domestic buildings. The discrepancy is noted, when compared with the English Version. Please clarify which one we should follow.</p> <p>(c) Set back requirement under PNAP APP-152</p>		
		<p>According to para.8(a) of PNAP APP152, a canopy that complies with Reg.10 of the B(P)R may be permitted. Please clarify whether horizontal screens as mentioned in PNAP APP 42 para.20 should also be allowed in these set-back areas.</p>		

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
600mm	<p>2017 APSEC Discussion Forum on 13 January 2017</p>	<p>QUESTION : MOE – Small Shops at street level Provision of roller shutter with a wicket door is a common practice for most street shops. The wicket door is usually 600mm wide and cannot meet the requirement under Table B2 of FS Code. Installations of these roller shutters are often left to the owners who in turn would ask AP whether such shutters would be considered as 'UBWs' and whether statutory orders to remove the shutters would be served. Practically roller shutter would not be closed unless the shop is closed. We suggest BD should allow roller shutters of small shops to be indicated in the GBP.</p>	<p>BD noted that as long as the said wicket door(s) in the roller shutter could comply with the requirements as stipulated in FS Code, in particular, Table 2 and Clause B13, those roller shutters could be shown on GBP for approval by BA.</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
<p>2017 APSEC Discussion Forum on 19 May 2017</p> <p>600mm</p> 	<p>QUESTION ; Clause C13.3 of FS Code – Kitchen in Use Classification 1 As pointed out in item 7 of 1/2016 ADF, the minimum distance for a sprinkler controlled household stove fire without shielding by walls should be 2m measured from the nearest corner of the stove to the door knob when the exit door was in closed position. In this connection, we have the following 2 queries regarding the diagram attached below.</p> <p>(1) Is the fire rated wall (highlighted in red) required if the cooking appliance is more than 2m away from the flat entrance. (Note: this is a one-bed room flat.)</p> <p>(2) Is gas stove allowed if it is more than 2m away from the entrance without the fire rated wall.</p>	<p>According to the FS Code 2011, if a fire barrier was not provided in accordance with Clause C13.3, for kitchens adjacent to the sole exit of a unit, a full height wall having an FRR not less than -/30/30 and not less than 600mm wide should be provided adjacent to the flat exit door together with the FSIs according to Clause C13.4. As discussed in item 7 of 1/2016 ADF, where stoves were already provided at location near to exits where screen walls could not be effective to protect the occupants at the entrance or the risk of open flame being likely to injure users of narrow passages, improvements measures should be considered such as the use of stove with extra safety provisions . From the sketch, the studio flat itself resembled a kitchen of a medium size flat . The “adjacent” meaning is obviously applicable thus requiring the screen wall. Furthermore, the screen wall as shown could obviously serve to a certain extent the screening effect, though not entirely satisfactory . After occupation, the room would likely be very congested with furniture items cornering users close to the stove before reaching exits. The screen wall should be indispensable in this scenario. Generally speaking, in considering whether screen walls would be required for open kitchens in such small studio flats , BD would pragmatically consider the layout of the flat, e.g. in L-shaped flats where the stove was located on the screened side from the entrance a layout already serving the screening function for the stove, such walls might not be necessary . On the other hand, in some apparently code-compliant layouts such as the proposed one, since the room was very small and the screen wall could only shadow a part of the exit door, the AP should consider enhancement measures such as safer stoves, on top of the screen wall.</p>		
<p>2019 APSEC Discussion Forum on 22 November 2019</p>	<p>Determination of Openable Window Area For openable bottom-hung window (Case A and Case B below), if the openable extent is not less than 600mm at the top of sash to window frame, its openable window area is to be calculated based on the elevation area of such window:</p>	<p>For bottom-hung window, BD confirmed that if the openable extent of the window was not less than 600mm, its openable window area should be calculated based on the elevation area of such window. In any case, regulation 8 of Building (Construction) Regulations should also be compiled with where there was a difference in adjacent levels greater than 600mm. By the same token, for cassette type of window, if there was 600mm or more clearance provided at the gaps, the openable window area could be calculated based on the elevation area of the window.</p>		

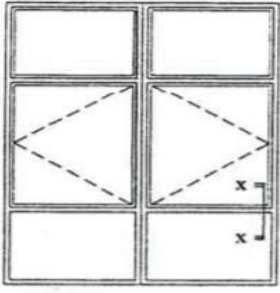
DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
600mm			 	
600mm	<p>2020 APSEC Discussion Forum on 10 January 2020</p>	<p>Determination of Openable Window Area Further to item 23 of ADF 5/2019, we would like to further enquire when 600mm clear opening could be provided at the top of sash of the openable window as per the below diagram, its openable window area is to be calculated based on the elevation area of such window: When the openable window sash is near to the structural column as per the below diagram, will BD accept Dimension A for calculation of the openable window area?</p>	<p>BD advised the 600mm clear opening should be provided at the lowest point of the spandrel and the area obstructed by the protective barrier should be disregarded. BD also confirmed the window opening obstructed by the column should be disregarded.</p> 	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
700mm	<i>Building (Planning) Regulations Cap. 123F</i>	<i>Third Schedule—Part 2—Division 12 61. Grab rails for shower compartments</i>	(4) A grab rail shall— (a) <i>have an external diameter of not less than 32 mm and not more than 40 mm;</i> (b) <i>be at a height of not less than 700 mm and not more than 800 mm above the finished floor level;</i> (c) <i>have a grip space of not less than 30 mm clear from the wall;</i> (d) <i>not be fitted in a manner that allows it to rotate within its fixed fittings;</i> and (e) <i>be capable of carrying a static load of 150 kg.</i>	
	<i>Practice Note for Authorized Persons, Engineers APP-37</i>	<i>Curtain Wall, Window and Window Wall</i>	Locking Devices of Openable Sashes/Sub-frames 17. Locking devices are used to restrain openable sashes/sub-frames of windows, window walls and curtain walls in locked positions. All components of locking devices should be made of durable and non-combustible materials. 18. Locking devices should be evenly distributed along the sash/sub-frame to allow even load distribution on the window frame/curtain wall. The locations and the ultimate design strength of the locking points should be shown on structural plans for approval ² . The ultimate design strength should be the characteristic strength divided by a factor of safety (FOS) of 1.8. The characteristic strength should be verified by means of a proof load test in accordance with the test criteria set out in Appendix C and the test report should be endorsed by RSE and submitted to BD prior to the application for an occupation permit or the submission of Form BA14 as appropriate. Proof load tests of locking devices may not be required if the type of the proposed locking devices is already included in the BD's Central Data Bank. 19. In order to ensure all locking points can be triggered effectively, a single handle bar should not be connected to more than 8 locking points. 20. <i>Hinges for openable sashes/sub-frames should be adequate in holding its own weight. In general, the size of a top-hung sash should not exceed 2.5m². Similarly, the width of a side-hung sash should not exceed 700mm.</i> 21. AP/RSE should ensure the openable sash/sub-frame and the locking devices are properly designed and assembled to meet the performance requirements and construction tolerance. In normal circumstance, the FOS of 1.8 is considered adequate for covering construction tolerance. Improper assembly may cause additional moment on the components of the locking devices. Adequate site supervision should also be provided to ensure that the works are properly assembled.	2 The requirements on locking devices are applicable to all new or major revision of structural plans for development proposals or alteration and addition works submitted to the BA for approval on or after 1 August 2020
	<i>Practice Note for Authorized Persons,</i>			

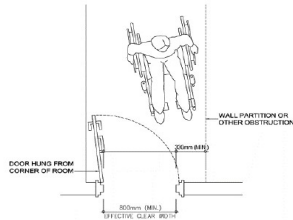
DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
700mm	Practice Note for Authorized Persons, Engineers APP-93	Planning and Design of Drainage Works	<p>Improvement</p> <p>3. In order to obviate such access difficulties and to facilitate the future maintenance of common drains, I shall require under section 28(1) of the Buildings Ordinance that the following be complied with: -</p> <p>(a) Except drains in car-parking floors, all common underground drains for new buildings shall run in a space or land which is 'sterilized' or otherwise designated as common parts of the building ;</p> <p>(b) Where internal common soil and waste stacks are proposed in domestic buildings not intended for single occupancy, such stacks shall be located in the common parts of the building. Where pipe-ducts or pipe wells are proposed to house common soil and waste stacks, they shall satisfy the following criteria respectively : -</p> <p>(i) Pipe Ducts</p> <p>(1) These pipe-ducts shall be accessible from the common parts of the building ;</p> <p>(2) An unobstructed working space, of not less than 700 mm in front of the pipes , shall be provided for maintenance and repair of the pipeworks ; and</p> <p>(3) The doors or panels providing access to the pipe-ducts shall not be less than 600 mm wide by 2000 mm high and shall comply with Part C of the Code of Practice for Fire Safety in Buildings 2011.</p>	
	Practice Note for Authorized Persons, Engineers APP-116	Aluminium Windows	<p>Design and Installation Requirements</p> <p>4. Window members, transoms and mullions together with the glass panes should be of adequate size and strength taking into consideration the location, height and orientation of the windows. Window frames should be securely and rigidly fixed in place to window openings in walls. Where fixing lugs are adopted, they shall be of stainless steel or hot dip galvanized steel having a minimum material thickness of 1.5mm and be placed at 300mm centres maximum. Where a spacing greater than 300mm is proposed, the AP/RSE should satisfy that the performance of the windows including structural stability and waterproofing would not be compromised . Adequate site supervision should be provided to check that all the fixing lugs are properly fixed.</p>	

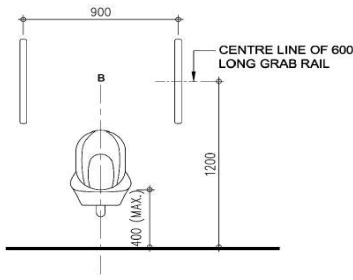
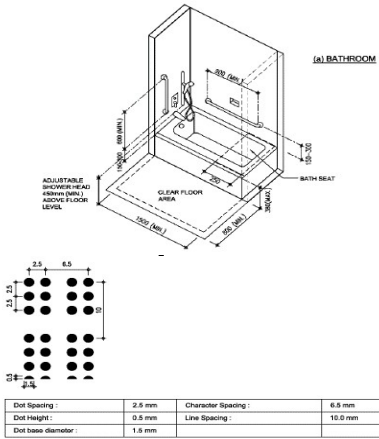
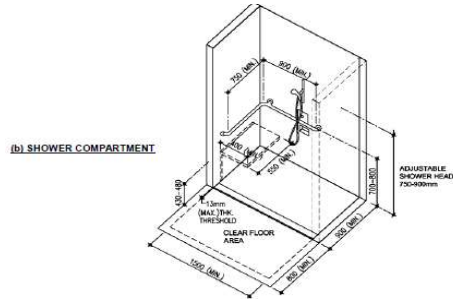
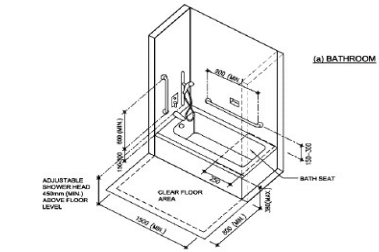
WIDTH OF WINDOW SASH
≤700mm



DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
	 <p style="text-align: center;">ELEVATION</p>		<p>5. <i>All structural members of a window section shall have a minimum aluminium thickness of 2mm and the depth of the mullion section shall not be less than 38mm</i> . Particular attention shall be paid to the fixing details of the hinges. All hinges and fastening mechanisms adopted in the installation shall be able to withstand the positive and negative pressures due to the designed wind conditions when the window is closed and shall be of adequate size and strength commensurate with the size of the window.</p> <p>6. <i>To ensure the strength and rigidity of side hung casement windows as well as the safety of the occupants operating the casements, the maximum width of the sash should be 700mm.</i></p> <p>7. Where 4-bar hinges are adopted, reference should be made to the Guidelines on Fixing of 4-bar Hinges at Appendix B.</p>	
800mm	<p>Part 2 Design Requirements Division 1—Auditorium and Related Facilities</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><i>Building (Planning) Regulations Cap. 123</i></p>		<p>4. Wheelchair spaces</p> <p>(1) On any premises with <i>an auditorium with not more than 800 fixed seats at spectator level, not less than 4 wheelchair spaces shall be provided at spectator level</i> . (L.N. 205 of 2008)</p> <p>(2) On any <i>premises with an auditorium with more than 800 fixed seats at spectator level, not less than 2 wheelchair spaces shall be provided at spectator level for every 400 fixed seats or any part thereof</i> . (L.N. 205 of 2008)</p> <p>(3) <i>A wheelchair space shall be adjacent to at least one other wheelchair space</i> .</p> <p>(4) <i>Wheelchair spaces shall be adjacent to fixed seats</i> .</p> <p>(5) <i>A wheelchair space shall have unobstructed view of the spot at which the relevant activity takes place</i> .</p> <p>(6) <i>The side of a wheelchair space facing the spot at which the relevant activity takes place shall be not less than 800 mm and the other side shall be not less than 1 300 mm.</i></p> <p>(7) <i>A passage leading to a wheelchair space from an accessible entrance of an auditorium shall be not less than 1 500 mm in width.</i></p> <p>8) <i>Nothing in this section prohibits the installation of readily removable seats in the wheelchair spaces when the spaces are not occupied by wheelchair users.</i></p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
800mm		Division 6—Dropped Kerbs	21. Requirements for dropped kerbsDropped kerbs shall be— (a) <i>not less than 1 200 mm in length and 1 200 mm in width</i> ; (b) <i>provided with a clearance not less than 800 mm in length at the back of the footway</i> ; (c) <i>ramped at a gradient not steeper than 1 in 10</i> ; (d) <i>at a level difference of not more than 15 mm with the vehicular areas</i> ;	
	Code of Practice for Fire Safety in Buildings 2011	Subsection D12 – Doors of a Fireman's Lift	Clause D12.1 <i>The door opening of a fireman's lift should not be less than 800mm wide and 2000mm high. The doors should be fitted with power operated automatic self-closing device .</i>	
	Design Manual Barrier Free Access 2008	Division 9 --- CORRIDORS, LOBBIES AND PATHS	35. <i>Controlled Passage</i> For <i>cashier counter, security device installed at shop entrance or turnstile controlled passage accessible to the public , each shall have at least one path of minimum 800 mm in width for the use by wheelchair users and clearly marked with international symbol of accessibility</i> , unless an alternative passage adjacent to the controlled passage is provided. (see Figure 18)	
		Division 10 ---DOORS	38. <i>Width of Doors</i> <i>Door, including one leaf of a pair of double doors, shall have a clear width of not less than 800 mm between the open door and opposite jamb or the other leaf .</i> (see Figure 22) 39. <i>Unobstructed Area</i> (1) <i>The unobstructed area adjacent to the door handle on the leading face of a single door shall not be less than 330 mm in width .</i> (see Figure 22) (2) <i>Door, if less than 330 mm from the corner of a room, shall swing from the side nearer to that corner .</i>	



DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
800mm	Obligatory Design Requirements		<p>55. Urinals</p> <p>If more than one urinal is provided, at least one urinal shall</p> <p>(i) have a clear levelled space of not less than 800 mm wide x 1500 mm deep in front; and</p> <p>(ii) be wall hung urinal with a front rim not higher than 400 mm, and have vertical grab rails of not less than 32 mm and not more than 40mm in external diameter and of 600 mm length on both sides at a height of 1200 mm above the finished floor level for use by persons with ambulant disabilities. (see Figure 25)</p>	
	 <p>Figure 25 - Accessible Urinal</p>		<p>56. Bathtubs</p> <p>(1) There shall be a clear floor space of not less than 1500mm x 800 mm in front of the bathtub (see Figure 27);</p> <p>(2) The bathtub shall be provided with a seat of not less than 250 mm in width (see Figure 27); and</p> <p>(3) The bathtub shall have a maximum height of 380 mm.</p>	
	 <p>Figure 31 - Specification of Braille Cells</p>		<p>(b) SHOWER COMPARTMENT</p> 	
<p>(a) BATHROOM</p> 		<p>68. Braille and Tactile Sign</p> <p>(1)&(2) Braille and tactile sign shall be installed on adjacent wall or door of public toilet to indicate whether the toilet is for male, female or unisex. The sign shall be placed at 900 mm to 1500 mm above the finished floor level. Specification of Braille cells is shown in Figure 31.</p> <p>(3) If there is no door, the sign shall be provided on the wall in front of the toilets.</p> <p>(4)&(5) A Braille and tactile fire exit map as shown in Figure 32 shall be provided directly above the call button of the accessible lift in the lobby of the accessible lift in a building if a fire exit map for the use of the public is provided. The map shall be placed at 800 mm to 1200 mm above the finished floor level.</p>		

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
800mm		<p><i>Recommended Design Requirements Telephone for Persons with Ambulant Disabilities and Wheelchair Users</i></p>	<p>(viii) If a forward approach is adopted, the enclosure, if any, should have a clear width of at least 800 mm to provide wheelchair access; shelves or other obstructions should not extend more than 400 mm from the face of the accessible payphone; and there should be a space of 750 mm wide by 650 mm high by 430 mm deep for the footplate of a wheelchair;</p> <p>(ix) if the accessible payphone is provided in an enclosed booth, the door of the booth should open outwards and have a clear width of not less than 800 mm between the open door and the opposite jamb or the other leaf; and</p> <p>(x) if the accessible payphones are provided in a booth without door, the entrance to the booth should not be less than 800 mm wide.</p>	
	<p><i>Practice Note for Authorized Persons, APP-23</i></p>	<p><i>Hoardings, Covered Walkways and Gantries (including Temporary Access for Construction Vehicles) Part IX of Building (Planning) Regulations</i></p>	<p><i>Highways Department and Transport Department Standard Requirements for Hoardings / Covered Walkways</i></p> <p>B. Transport Department</p> <p>(8) The hoarding shall not cause sightline problem to the road users, e.g. the use of high concrete plinth of more than 800mm in height at or near run-ins, junctions and crossings etc, should be avoided. The appropriate Chief Traffic Engineer of TD should be consulted, if necessary.</p>	
	<p><i>2014 APSEC Discussion Forum on 10 November 2014</i></p>	<p>QUESTION ; Temporary Refuge Spaces (TRS) and Wider Corridor / Lobby FS Code Section 4 Clause B30 – Addenda and Consequential Corrigenda to the FS Code for the Provisions of Means of Escape for Persons with a Disability in Case of Fire and JPN1 refer. Please kindly clarify the followings:- ● If TRS (emergency use only) are provided within the Fireman's Lift Lobby (naturally ventilated) of Typical Residential Floors, please clarify which calculation for widen lift lobbies exemption shall be used as per below diagrams:</p>	<p>The BD confirmed that Scenario 3 should be adopted in calculating the exempted GFA for the provision of a wider common corridor / lobby under JPN 1.</p> <p>Scenario 3 Exemption portion in front of TRS = Overall width (2450mm) - TRS (750mm) - width for required exit route (1050mm) = 650mm</p>	

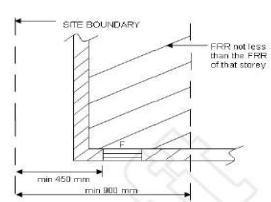
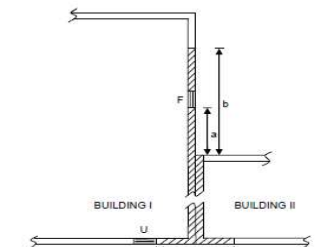
DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
800mm	2016 APSEC Discussion Forum on 27 May 2016	Width of Doors to TRS FS Code B30.3 and BFA Para 38 and Figure 22 are relevant. Please clarify that for MOE doors leading to TRS: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The minimum clear door width of 850mm stated in FS Code B30.3 should be measured to the vertical members of door frame , and ● BFA para 38 and figure 22 regarding the 'effective clear width' of 800mm should be complied 	While the minimum width of door for passage of wheelchair user in general was 800mm, the minimum clear width of door leading to TRS should be 850mm as required under the FS Code.	
850 mm	Building (Planning) Regulations Cap. 123F	Third Schedule—Part 2—Division 18 Division 19—Lifts 78. Special requirements for accessible lifts	1) Subject to subsection (2), every floor of a building shall be accessible by at least one passenger lift which— (a) has internal car dimensions of not less than 1 100 mm in width and not less than 1 200 mm in depth; (b) has a clear entrance of not less than 850 mm in width; and (c) is fitted with handrails— (i) which extends to within 150 mm of the corners at the rear and sides of the car; (ii) the top of the gripping surface of which is at a height of not less than 850 mm and not more than 950 mm above the finished floor level; and (iii) which is so fitted that a space of not less than 30 mm and not more than 50 mm is left between the handrails and wall . (2) Where there are more than 3 lifts in a building, access shall be provided to every floor by at least one lift which— (a) has internal car dimensions of not less than 1 500 mm × 1 400 mm (in either width or depth); and (b) has a clear entrance of not less than 850 mm in width.	

DATA	Related Regulations		Descriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
900mm	Building (Planning) Regulations	Third Schedule—Part 2—Division 19	<p>80. Lift control buttons</p> <p>(1) The—</p> <p>(a) <i>floor numbering buttons;</i></p> <p>(b) <i>emergency call bell push buttons; and</i></p> <p>(c) <i>door opening push buttons,</i></p> <p><i>in a lift car shall be not less than 900 mm and not more than 1 200 mm above the floor of the car .</i></p> <p>(2) <i>The lift call buttons at a lift lobby shall be not less than 900 mm and not more than 1 200 mm above the finished floor level of the lobby .</i></p> <p>(3) Subsections (1) and (2) <i>do not apply to secondary control panels for over-spilled floor numbering buttons .</i></p> <p>(4) <i>All buttons referred to in subsections (1) and (2) shall have a dimension of not less than 20 mm.</i></p> <p>(5) <i>Braille and tactile markings shall be placed—</i></p> <p>(a) on the buttons referred to in subsections (1) and (2); or</p> <p>(b) to the left of such buttons.</p> <p>(6) <i>The Braille and tactile markings shall—</i></p> <p>(a) <i>have a dimension of not less than 15 mm in height;</i></p> <p>and</p> <p>(b) <i>be raised not less than 1 mm.</i></p> <p>(7) <i>The tactile markings for push buttons for the main entrance floor shall be identified with a symbol in a star shape.</i></p> <p>(8) <i>An emergency call bell push button shall be identified with a symbol in a bell shape.</i></p>	
		Part V Staircases, Fire Escapes and Access for Firefighting and Rescue Purposes	<p>The <i>main staircase of every building which exceeds 1 storey in height shall—</i></p> <p>(a) <i>have a clear height of not less than 2 m ;</i></p> <p>(b) <i>have a clear width of not less than 900 mm;</i></p> <p>(c) be constructed with <i>treads not less than 225 mm in width (measured at the centre of the flight) from the face of one riser to the face the next riser and with risers not exceeding 175 mm in height;</i></p> <p>(d) <i>have not more than 16 steps in any flight without the introduction of a landing ;</i></p> <p>(e) <i>be provided on one or both sides with properly fixed handrails</i> which, in section, shall be—</p> <p>(i) <i>if tubular, not less than 38 mm and not greater than 50 mm in external diameter;</i></p> <p>(ii) <i>if rectangular, not less than 40 mm and not more than 50 mm wide with an overall depth, or depth to a deep groove, of not more than 50 mm ;</i></p> <p>(iii) in any other case, such as to afford to the user thereto a grip analogous to that specified in the case of either tubular or rectangular handrails, whichever may be the more appropriate having regard to the shape of the section; (L.N. 365 of 1984; E.R. 5 of 2020)</p> <p>(f) <i>be so arranged as to provide access to a street or to an open space leading thereto ; and</i></p> <p>(g) <i>if continued to the roof of the building as a means of escape in case of fire be provided with a door at this level, such door to be glazed in the upper panels .</i> (L.N. 294 of 1976)</p>	

DATA	Related Regulations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
900mm	Building (Planning) Regulations	Third Schedule—Part 2—Division 10	<p>44. <i>Frameless glass doors</i></p> <p>(1) <i>A frameless glass door and the glass panel adjacent to it (if any) shall be prominently marked so as to make them conspicuous .</i></p> <p>(2) <i>At least a portion of the marking shall be placed not less than 900 mm and not more than 1 500 mm above the finished floor level.</i></p>	
	Code of Practice for Fire Safety in Buildings 2011	Subsection B14 – Construction of Required StaircasesClause B14.6	<p>A <i>handrail should be provided on each side of the required staircase</i> . Every <i>such handrail</i> should:</p> <p>(a) <i>be at a height not less than 850mm nor more than 1100mm ;</i></p> <p>(b) <i>not project so as to reduce the clear width of the required staircase by more than 90mm, for each handrail ;</i> and</p> <p>(c) <i>be continuous throughout each flight, but need not be carried round a landing or half landing except in the case of a premises of Use Classification 5a.</i></p>	
		Subsection B30 – Temporary Refuge SpacesClause B30.3	<p>Any door from the common area leading to a temporary refuge space <i>should have a clear width of not less than 850mm or such width as required</i> under Table B2, <i>whichever is greater; and door handle at not less than 950mm and not more than 1050mm above the finished floor level, measured from the top surface of the grip should be provided to one side of the door.</i></p> <p>Commentary <i>Wider doors up to 950mm shall be a good practice to cater for the use of large powered wheelchairs..</i></p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
850mm	Code of Practice for Fire Safety in Buildings 2011	Subsection D18 – Construction of Access Staircase in a Firefighting and Rescue Stairway	<p>Clause D18.1</p> <p>Every access staircase in a firefighting and rescue stairway should:</p> <p>(a) have a clear width of not less than 1050mm and a clear headroom of not less than 2000mm;</p> <p>(b) be arranged in straight flights without winders and each flight should consist of not more than 16 risers nor less than 2 risers. Treads should be not less than 225mm wide, measured clear of nosings, and risers should be not more than 175mm high ;</p> <p>(c) be provided with landings at the top and bottom of each flight with a minimum dimension of not less than the width of the flight and no door should at any part of its swing reduce the effective width or effective radius of such landings ; and</p> <p>(d) be provided with handrails on each side of the staircase at a height of not less than 850mm and not more than 1100mm above the steps or landings. The handrails should not project so as to reduce the clear width of the staircase by more than 90mm for each handrail and should be continuous throughout each flight of the staircase but need not be carried round a landing or half landing</p>	
		Subsection B30 – Temporary Refuge Spaces	<p>Clause B30.4</p> <p>A closed-circuit television and direct intercom link, both backed up by emergency power for at least 1 hour, should be provided to every temporary refuge space for communication with the management office of the building.</p> <p>The height of the intercom link shall not be less than 900mm and not more than 1200mm above the floor level.</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
900mm	Code of Practice for Fire Safety in Buildings 2011	Subsection C5 – Prevention of Fire Spread between Buildings Clause C5.2 Separation between Buildings on the Same Site	<p>Buildings on the same site are regarded as adjoining buildings if they are less than 1.8m apart . Fire barriers should be provided in compliance with the following requirements:</p> <p>(a) Where the angle made between two facades of two adjoining buildings is more than 135o as measured on plan:</p> <p>(i) any part of any such building within 900mm of any such adjoining building should be enclosed by imperforate external walls having an FRR of not less than that of the internal elements of construction ; and</p> <p>(ii) notwithstanding (a)(i) above, unprotected openings may be made in such external walls of the building provided they are not less than 900mm from such unprotected opening in such adjoining building.</p> <p>(b) Where the angle made between two facades of two adjoining buildings is at 135° or less as measured on plan:</p> <p>(i) any part of any such building within 1.8m of any such adjoining building should be enclosed by imperforate external walls having an FRR of not less than that of the internal elements of construction ;</p> <p>(ii) openings are permitted within the fire barriers, provided they are at a distance of at least 900mm from the adjoining building and protected by a fixed light having an FRR of not less than that of the storey complying with Table C2; and</p> <p>(iii) notwithstanding (b)(i) & (b)(ii) above, unprotected openings may be made in such external walls of the building provided they are not less than 1.8m from the unprotected opening in such adjoining building .</p> <p>(c) Any part of a roof within 1.8m of the adjoining building should be imperforate and having an FRR of not less than that of the internal elements of construction of the storey below . Openings are permitted within the fire barriers, provided they are at a distance of at least 900mm from the adjoining building and protected by a fixed light having an FRR of not less than that of the storey complying with Table C2. See Diagram C1 for illustration.</p>	

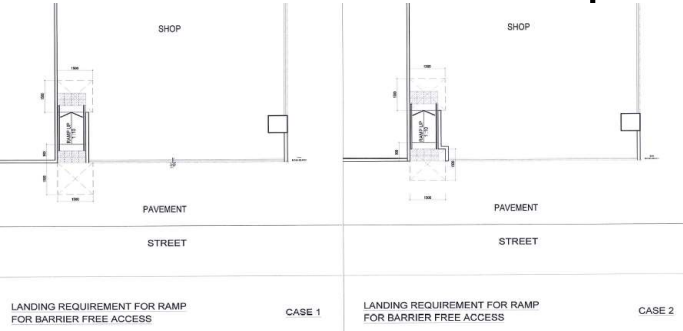
DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
900mm	Code of Practice for Fire Safety in Buildings 2011		<p>Clause C5.3 Separation between Buildings not on the Same Site</p> <p>Fire barriers should be provided to buildings of adjoining sites in the following manner:</p> <p>(a) If any part of any building is within a distance of not more than 900mm from the site boundary of the adjoining site, the external walls and roofs of that part should have an FRR of not less than that of the internal elements of construction; and</p> <p>(b) The external walls and the roof should be imperforate. Openings are permitted, provided they are at a distance of at least 450mm from the common site boundary of the neighbouring site and are protected by fixed light having an FRR of not less than that of the storey and comply with Table C2.</p> <p>See Diagram C1 for illustration.</p>	
		Subsection C11 – Protection against External Fire Spread	<p>Clause C11.1</p> <p>Subject to Subsection C5, the external wall of a building at any floor should be separated from the external wall at the floor next below by:</p> <p>(a) a spandrel that is a vertical element of 900mm, with an FRR of not less than that of the intervening storey; or</p> <p>(b) a horizontal projection of 500mm, with an FRR of not less than that of the intervening storey.</p> <p>This clause does not apply to a single family house or a sprinkler protected building.</p> <p>See Diagram C7 for illustration.</p> <p>Commentary</p> <p>A 900mm spandrel or 500mm horizontal projection is effective in slowing flame spread only and may not prevent fire spread. A sprinkler system installed in compliance with the requirements of the Director of Fire Services is the most effective form of fire control to prevent vertical fire spread .</p>	
<p>Diagram C1: Prevention of Fire Spread between Buildings (See Clauses C5.2 and C5.3)</p> <p>Example (a): Buildings not on the same site (plan view)</p>  <p>Example (b): Buildings on the same site (plan view)</p>  <p> F FRR of external walls ≥ FRR of that storey U unprotected openings a min. 900mm b min. 1800mm </p>				

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
900mm	2016 APSEC Discussion Forum on 4 November 2016	<p>Protection against External Fire Spread Clause C11.1 of COP for Fire Safety in Buildings 2011 reads: "Subject to Subsection C5, the external wall of a building at any floor should be separated from the external wall at the floor next below by: (a) a spandrel that is a vertical element of 900mm with an FRR of not less than that of the intervening storey; or (b) a horizontal projection of 500mm, with an FRR of not less than that of the intervening storey. This clause does not apply to a single family house or a sprinkler protected building." Based on the above, we would like to confirm that the fire separation requirement shall NOT apply to the sprinkler protected non-domestic floors of a composite building as illustrated in the following sketch:</p>	<p>Whilst "building" includes "any part of building" as per Section 2 of the Buildings Ordinance, BD re-confirmed that the fire separation requirement as per Clause C11.1 of the FS Code should NOT apply to the sprinkler protected non-domestic floors of a composite building. BD further elaborated that such fire separation was also NOT required at the portion of external wall between the non-sprinkler-protected domestic floor above and sprinkler-protected non-domestic floor below, considering that fire spread should be in an upward manner. However, for the vice versa arrangement, relevant fire separation between would still be necessary.</p>	
		<p style="text-align: center;">Composite Building with Shops at Podium and Residential Tower</p>	0	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
900mm	2017 APSEC Discussion Forum on 13 January 2017	<p>Hoarding Works</p> <p>a. While hoarding is usually required to separate portion(s) of a site under Phased OP (POP) application from the rest of the site which is under construction, we opine that hoarding with fire resistance rating should not be required if the completed building (under POP application) has a clear minimum separation from the POP boundary for, say, 900mm.</p> <p>Please advise if this would be acceptable to BD.</p> <p>b. Except for demolition works, it has been the usual practice that consent for superstructure works could be granted so far as the respective hoarding plans and hoarding permit have been accepted and granted; and that the hoarding for superstructure works would be in place prior to actual commencement of works. However, our members expressed that there are recent cases where superstructure consent can only be granted upon completion of hoarding for superstructure. Please clarify if this is unnecessary or there is a change in practice.</p>	<p>Item 1a</p> <p>In order to assure safe occupation, if part of a building was under Phased OP (POP), the POP areas should be separated from the construction site within the building envelop by fire barriers having adequate FRR commensurate with the circumstances and use and in no case less than 2-hour as if for separate buildings. Access to construction sites via POP areas would not be normally permitted unless for difficult sites and with necessary safety precautionary measures in place to the satisfaction of the BD. For POP areas delineated discretely by fence walls from construction sites in open areas, BD viewed that the fence wall need not be fire-rated in general provided that a clear separating distance without fire load between the completed POP boundary fence wall and the completed building was not less than 1800mm. Other factor that BD would consider in requiring portion of hoarding to be fire-rated would include the proximity of the MOE path to the</p> <p>POP boundary fence wall. The necessary measures for protection against falling objects, if necessary, should be taken into account on top of the fire separation requirements.</p> <p>Item 1b BD advised that there had not been a change in the practice in this regard. Superstructure consent applications could generally be granted when the respective hoarding plans had been submitted to BD and all the relevant conditions complied with. It would be the AP/RSE's duty to ensure that the hoarding works were in gear with the progress of the construction. However, hoarding and other protective measures must be satisfactorily erected before demolition consent could be considered.</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
900mm	2017 APSEC Discussion Forum on 13 January 2017	<p>Spandrel Provision for Required Staircase Pursuant to Clause C11.1 of FS Code, for non-sprinkler protected building, the external wall of a building at any floor should be separated from the external wall at the floor next below by the vertical 900mm FRR element for slowing the flame spread. Would BD clarify if such requirement does not apply to required staircase as the entire taircase shaft should be a single compartment.</p>	BD advised that although the spandrel provisions or horizontal projections under Clause C11.1 of the FS Code would not be required for a protected staircase enclosure, the protection of a required staircase should follow the requirements in Clause C9.6.	
		<p>AC Platform and recent Circular Letter of 23-12-2016 We welcome the circular letter clarifying the necessary practices to ensure safety for maintenance of AC after the buildings are occupied. We wish to clarify the following: When there is only one layer of AC outdoor unit, the AC platform is ignored for prescribed window or open space consideration. Please advise whether the above would change if there are more than 1 layer of AC outdoor units stacked up at the AC Platform.</p>	BD advised that while the height of an typical A/C outdoor unit would be around 800 – 900mm , the height of 2 units stacked up would reach up to around 1600 – 1800mm and obstruct the natural lighting and ventilation if placed in front of the windows and hence considered unacceptable . It was considered acceptable for such A/C platforms to protrude into the rectangular horizontal plane. For open space consideration, the presence of A/C outdoor units would have relatively insignificant implication and stacking of more than one layer of A/C units would also be acceptable.	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
900mm	APSEC Discussion Forum on 11 August 2017	<p>AC Platforms</p> <p>a. As per BD's circular letter dated 23 December 2016, the current limit of 750mm projection may be relaxed up to 900mm if justified on a need basis, providing that the whole or at least the outer 150mm of the platform is to be of perforated onstruction. As such provision is to enhance maintenance & repair of external AC units as well as safety of workers, we are of the view that the portion of the platform beyond 750mm is not to be included in the 10% GFA concession cap. If that is the case, Appendix A of PNAP APP-151 is to be revised accordingly.</p> <p>b. For an AC platform with perforated screen along its perimeter, we would like to know if it is acceptable to provide a horizontal screen on top of the platform to screen off the AC units from eing revealed from inside of the unit, providing that such horizontal screen is of 70% or more erforation and can be readily pened (say by means of hinges) to facilitate access to and maintenance/repair of AC units.</p>	<p>a. BD shared the same understanding with HKIA in that the portion of AC platform beyond 750mm but within 900mm should not be included in the 10% GFA concession cap, provided that such provision was justified on a need basis and the configuration of the AC platform was in compliance with the guidelines as promulgated under BD's circular letter dated 23 December 2016. Otherwise, the said extended AC platform should still be included in the 10% GFA concession cap as per Appendix A of PNAP APP-151, or even not exempted from such if the relevant criteria were not met.</p> <p>b. BD opined that such horizontal screens might possibly obstruct the workers' access to the AC units in the carrying out of routine maintenance/repair works, not to mention its possible adverse effect on building bulk and lighting and ventilation, and hence did not support such provision. [Post meeting note: BD would like to clarify that provided that the design of communal AC platforms ancillary to domestic use met the relevant criteria of AC platform, such would not be regarded as AC Room in terms of SC and PR assessment.]</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
900mm	APSEC Discussion Forum on 18 January 2019	<p><u>Clear Space at Foot of Accessible Ramp</u> (Item raised by AAP)</p> <p>Pursuant to paragraph 16 in Division 5 of Chapter 4 of DMBFA 2008, a clear space of not less than 1500mm x 1500mm shall be provided at the head and foot of every ramp. As regards a G/F entrance ramp abutting a public pavement, we would like to clarify whether a clear space within the development of not less than 1500mm in width and 900mm in depth (i.e.600mm for tactile warning strip and 300mm for horizontal extension of the handrails) would be required at the foot of the ramp. A sketch is rovided below for reference.</p>	<p>BD would review and further advise.</p> <p>[Post Meeting Notes: BD confirmed that, for G/F entrance ramp abutting a public pavement, the provision of the 1500mm x 1500mm clear space at the foot of the ramp wholly within the curtilage of the development was not required provided that such clearance space would be available in the pavement for direct entry to and exit from the building. Notwithstanding this, a clear space within the development of not less than 900mm in depth, i.e. 600mm for tactile warning strip and 300mm for horizontal extension of the handrails as shown in Figures 7 and 16A of the DMBFA 2008 respectively, was still required to be provided at the foot of the ramp.]</p>  <p>LANDING REQUIREMENT FOR RAMP FOR BARRIER FREE ACCESS CASE 1</p> <p>LANDING REQUIREMENT FOR RAMP FOR BARRIER FREE ACCESS CASE 2</p>	
			<p><u>AC Platform in Steel Construction</u></p> <p>It appears that paragraph 2(a) and Figure 4 of ppendix C to Code of Practice on Design for Safety – External aintenance 2019 (the “Design for Safety Code”) regarding the projection and width of AC platform are essentially ritten/illustrated for AC platform in R.C. onstruction, except for those portions projecting beyond 750mm.</p>	<p>The requirements stipulated under Appendix C to the Design for Safety Code were also applicable to AC platform wholly in steel construction .</p> <p>BD also advised that paragraph 3(c) of PNAP APP-19 should cover AC platforms complying with Appendices B and C to the Design for Safety Code, whilst paragraph 3(b) was retained for other AC platforms need not be counted for site coverage and plot ratio , e.g. those in existing project under construction.</p>

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
900mm	APSEC Discussion Forum on 10 January 2020	We understand that the design criteria for allowing an AC platform to project up to 900mm disregarding the thickness of protective arrier/guard-rail/screen including its supporting structural members will equally be applicable to AC platform wholly in steel construction. Please confirm that our understanding is correct. Besides, we also suggest making appropriate mendments to paragraph 3(b) of PNAP APP-19 regarding the maximum allowable projection of AC platform to align with the Design for Safety Code.		

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
1000 - 1050mm	Building (Planning) Regulations Cap. 123F	Division 10—Doors 39. Unobstructed area	<p>40. Double-action self-closing doors A double-action self-closing door shall have—</p> <p>(a) a check mechanism that is designed to prevent the door swinging beyond the closed position; and</p> <p>(b) a transparent vision-panel with a bottom edge not more than 1 000 mm above the finished floor level and a top edge not less than 1 500 mm above the finished floor level</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
1000 - 1050mm	Building (Planning) Regulations Cap. 123F	Part IV Lighting and Ventilation 31. Minimum requirements of window	<p>31. Minimum requirements of window</p> <p>(1) No prescribed window shall, for the purposes of regulation 30, be deemed to face into the external air unless—</p> <p>(a) it faces into a street which is not less than 4.5 m wide; or</p> <p>(b) it faces into a space uncovered and unobstructed above the area delineated by the rectangular horizontal plane; and</p> <p>(c) it is so placed that, if another rectangular plane, the base whereof is equal to and common with the base of the rectangular horizontal plane, is inclined, above the rectangular horizontal plane, at an angle of 71 1/2° from the horizontal where the window is in a room used for habitation or 76° from the horizontal where the window is in a room used for the purposes of an office or as a kitchen, no part of the building, or of any other building within the site on which such building is erected, protrudes above such plane; or (G.N.A. 97 of 1962)</p> <p>(d) where such window opens on to an area bounded on the side opposite the window by a boundary of the site on which the building is erected, such window is so placed that, if the rectangular horizontal plane is projected to such boundary and, from the position at which it first intersects the boundary, another rectangular plane, the base whereof is parallel and level with the sill of the window and has a length equal to the length of the base of the rectangular horizontal plane, is projected, towards the site and above the rectangular horizontal plane, at an angle of 80 1/2° from the horizontal where the window is in a room used for habitation or 83° where the window is in a room used for the purposes of an office or as a kitchen, no part of the building, or of any other building within such site, protrudes above such inclined plane: (G.N.A. 97 of 1962) Provided that, where there is a service lane or street less than 4.5 m wide adjacent to and parallel with such boundary, the boundary shall, for the purposes of this subparagraph be deemed to be at a position 1.5 m beyond such boundary. (L.N. 54 of 1969)</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
1000 - 1050mm	Building (Planning) Regulations Cap. 123F		<p>(2) The rectangular horizontal plane shall be such that— (a) it has an area of not less than 21 m²; and (b) the minimum length of the base is not less than 2.3 m; and (c) the minimum length of the sides at right angles to the base, between the wall in which the window is sited and any other wall or building opposite thereto within the boundary of the site on which the building is erected, is not less than 4.5 m; or (d) where the window opens on to an area bounded on the side opposite to the window by a boundary of the site on which the building is erected, the minimum length of the sides at right angles to the base, between the wall in which the window is sited and such boundary, is not less than 2.3 m; or (e) where the window opens on to an area bounded on the side opposite to the window by a boundary of the site on which the building is erected and there is a service lane or street less than 4.5 m wide adjacent to and parallel with such boundary, the minimum length of the sides at right angles to the base, between the wall in which the window is sited and a line 1.5 m beyond such boundary or, where such service lane or street is less than 3 m wide, between the wall in which the window is sited and a line drawn along the centre line of the service lane or street, is not less than 2.3 m. (L.N. 54 of 1969; 17 of 2018 s. 53)</p>	
	Building (Planning) Regulations Cap. 123F		<p>3) For the purposes of this regulation— (a) base (底邊), when used in relation to the rectangular horizontal plane, means that side of the rectangular horizontal plane common with the line of the sill of the window; rectangular horizontal plane (矩形水平面) means a rectangular plane at the level of the sill of the window having the minimum area and minimum dimensions prescribed by paragraph (2) (L.N. 307 of 1998); window (窗) includes french window; and (b) the sill of a prescribed window shall be deemed to be at a level 1 m above the level of the floor of the room for which the prescribed window is provided, whether or not the sill is at such level!. (L.N. 54 of 1969)(G.N.A. 83 of 1959; L.N. 294 of 1976)</p>	
		Part I General 2. Interpretation		<p>open air (露天地方) means a space which— (a) is vertically uncovered and unobstructed; (b) is not less, in any horizontal dimension, than 1.5 m; and (c) where such space is enclosed on 4 sides, has a horizontal area of not less than 1 m² for every 6 m of the mean height of the walls enclosing the space; (G.N.A. 83 of 1959; L.N. 294 of 1976)</p>

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
1000 - 1050mm	Design Manual Barrier Free Access 2008	Figure 22 – Plan of Door Suitable for Wheelchair B. Recommended Design Requirements	Automatic Door Openers (d) Automatic door opener should be provided on the main entrance door of buildings not included in paragraph 45 and should: (i) remain open for a minimum of 5 seconds; (ii) have a guardrail where it opens into a route of travel (see Figure 23); (iii) have a sign showing automatic door; and (iv) be located outside of the door swing. Sliding automatic door with overhead sensor operating device or manual large button control should be provided. Vision Panels (e) Transparent vision-panel should be provided to door in between accessible path. The vision-panel should be installed with bottom edge not more than 1000 mm and top edge not less than 1500 mm above the finished floor level.	
	Code of Practice for Fire Safety in Buildings 2011	Subsection B21 - Exit Requirements for Use Classification 5a Subsection B25 – Exit Route Details	Clause B25.5 Where tiered seating is provided and is located such that persons could fall more than 1000mm, a guard rail should be provided at a height of at least 1100mm to prevent falling	
	APSEC Discussion Forum on 16 March 2012	Under current APP-68 (previously known as PNAP-173), the structural design of cantilevered structure with span more than 1000mm should use a beam-and-slab type of arrangement instead of pure slab cantilever. Recently, most of the new residential buildings in Hong Kong have balconies with a antilever span of 1200mm to 500mm. For aesthetic reason, most architects would like to have a thicker pure cantilever slab for the balcony, instead of having the edge beams. Also,	BD clarified that PNAP APP-68 for cantilevered structures to adopt a beam-slab construction if the span exceeding 1000mm is advisory. BD would consider RSE's proposal case by case with due consideration of global stability and safety , i.e. reduced working stress of rebars, detailing of rebars arrangement, etc. HKIE's suggestion on limit the working stress of rebars, concrete cover etc. are already given in the PNAP.	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
1000 - 1050mm	APSEC Discussion Forum on 16 March 2012	when the width of the balcony is only half way across the living room, the anchorage detail for the cantilever beam is much more difficult to construct. We understand that the APP-68 advised to increase the slab thickness inside the flat in order to have a straight re-bar; however, the slab would need to be at least 300mm thick which will increase the concrete volume a lot & reduce the clear eadroom of the normal residential unit. We would like BD to allow and consider using pure cantilever slab onstruction for span up to 1500mm. The minimum cover and slab thickness can be increased, and the design service stress at re-bar will still be limited to certain value		
1050 mm	Building (Planning) Regulations Cap. 123F	Part 2 Design Requirements Division 4—Access Route	<p>11. Provision of access route</p> <p>(1) Subject to subsection (2), an access route shall be provided from a prominent point on the lot boundary, which is accessible to a public street or pedestrian way, directly—</p> <p>(a) to—</p> <p>(i) an entrance which is commonly used by the public; or</p> <p>(ii) a point adjacent to an entrance which is commonly used by the public; and</p> <p>(b) to an accessible lift.</p> <p>(2) Subsection (1) does not apply if providing an accessible entrance which is commonly used by the public at a prominent point on the lot boundary is impracticable because of difficult terrain or unusual characteristics of the site.</p> <p>(3) Where—</p> <p>(a) subsection (1) does not apply by virtue of subsection (2); or</p> <p>(b) the main entrance is not an accessible entrance, a vehicular access route to the building shall be provided and adequate directional signs shall be posted at a conspicuous location of the main entrance to show clearly the location of, and the route to, an accessible entrance.</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
1050 mm	Building (Planning) Regulations Cap. 123F	Division 5—Ramps	Width of ramps <i>Ramps shall be not less than 1 050 mm in width.</i>	
		Division 9—Corridors, Lobbies and Paths	Manoeuvring space (1) <i>A corridor, lobby, path or similar space shall have a clear width of not less than 1 050 mm .</i> (2) A space of not less than 1 500 mm in width and in depth shall be provided within 3 500 mm of a corridor, lobby or path where the means of exit for persons with a disability is in one direction only. (3) A lobby in a corridor shall be not less than 1 200 mm in length (excluding space for door swings). (4) A level area extending not less than 1 200 mm beyond the swings of the doors and not less than 1 500 mm in width shall be provided on both sides of every entrance of a building. (5) This section does not apply to lobbies which lead to staircases only.	
		Division 10—Doors	Handles <i>A door handle shall be not less than 950 mm and not more than 1 050 mm above the finished floor level, measured from the top surface of the grip.</i>	
		Division 11—Toilets and Water Closet Cubicles	Flushing controls (1) This section applies to flushing controls in accessible water closet cubicles. (2) A flushing control shall be— (a) <i>mounted on the wide side of the cubicle at a height of not less than 600 mm and not more than 1 050 mm above the finished floor level</i> ; and (b) hand-operated or automatic. (3) A hand-operated flushing control shall— (a) be capable of being operated with one hand; Flushing controls (1) This section applies to flushing controls in accessible water closet cubicles. (2) A flushing control shall be— (a) <i>mounted on the wide side of the cubicle at a height of not less than 600 mm and not more than 1 050 mm above the finished floor level</i> ; and (b) hand-operated or automatic. (3) A hand-operated flushing control shall— (a) be capable of being operated with one hand;	
	Code of Practice for Fire Safety in Buildings 2011	Subsection B14 – Construction of Required Staircases	Clause B14.5 No required staircase should <i>exceed 1800mm in width</i> . If a wider staircase is required, it <i>should be divided by a central handrail into separate sections such that each section should be not less than 1050mm but not more than 1800mm in width.</i>	
	Building (Construction) Regulation (Cap. 123 sub. leg. Q)			

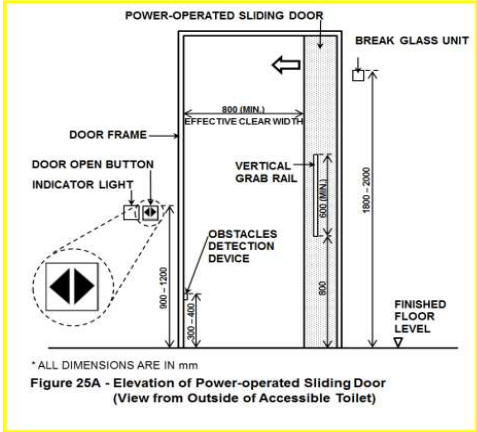
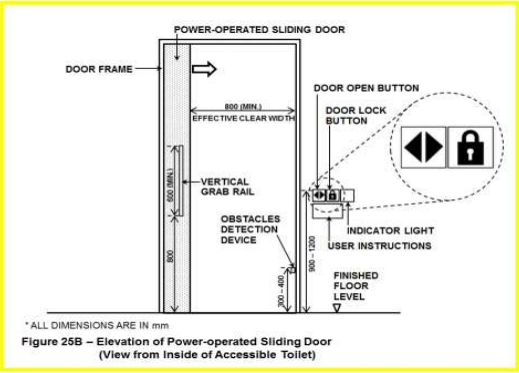
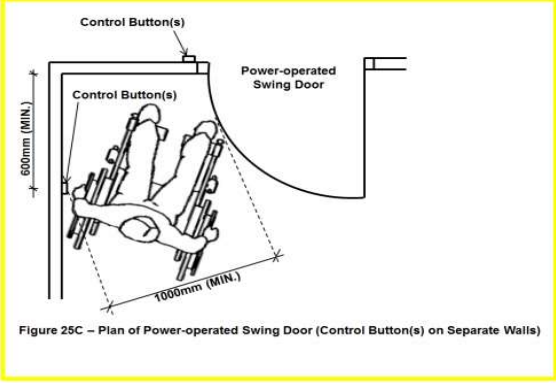
DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks																																																																																																																																																																																								
	Manuals	Page/Table																																																																																																																																																																																										
1050 mm	Code of Practice for Fire Safety in Buildings 2011	Subsection B8 – Exits from Storeys	<p>Table B2</p> <p>Table B2: Minimum number and width of exit doors and exit routes from a room, fire compartment or storey</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th rowspan="2">Occupant Capacity of room, fire compartment or storey (No. of persons)</th> <th rowspan="2">Minimum No. of exit doors or exit routes</th> <th colspan="2">Minimum total width (in mm)</th> <th colspan="2">Minimum Width (in mm) of each</th> </tr> <tr> <th>Exit doors</th> <th>Exit routes</th> <th>Exit door</th> <th>Exit route</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>4-30</td><td>1</td><td></td><td></td><td>750</td><td>1050</td></tr> <tr><td>31-200</td><td>2</td><td>1750</td><td>2100</td><td>850</td><td>1050</td></tr> <tr><td>201-300</td><td>2</td><td>2500</td><td>2500</td><td>1050</td><td>1050</td></tr> <tr><td>301-500</td><td>2</td><td>3000</td><td>3000</td><td>1050</td><td>1050</td></tr> <tr><td>501-750</td><td>3</td><td>4500</td><td>4500</td><td>1200</td><td>1200</td></tr> <tr><td>751-1000</td><td>4</td><td>6000</td><td>6000</td><td>1200</td><td>1200</td></tr> <tr><td>1001-1250</td><td>5</td><td>7500</td><td>7500</td><td>1350</td><td>1350</td></tr> <tr><td>1251-1500</td><td>6</td><td>9000</td><td>9000</td><td>1350</td><td>1350</td></tr> <tr><td>1501-1750</td><td>7</td><td>10500</td><td>10500</td><td>1500</td><td>1500</td></tr> <tr><td>1751-2000</td><td>8</td><td>12000</td><td>12000</td><td>1500</td><td>1500</td></tr> <tr><td>2001-2250</td><td>9</td><td>13500</td><td>13500</td><td>1500</td><td>1500</td></tr> <tr><td>2251-2500</td><td>10</td><td>15000</td><td>15000</td><td>1500</td><td>1500</td></tr> <tr><td>2501-2750</td><td>11</td><td>16500</td><td>16500</td><td>1500</td><td>1500</td></tr> <tr><td>2751-3000</td><td>12</td><td>18000</td><td>18000</td><td>1500</td><td>1500</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>>3000 persons - the number of exit doors, exit routes and their width to be determined by the Building Authority</p> <p>Notes:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> In the case of Places of Public Entertainment (Use Classification 5a), the requirements in Section 3 should be complied with. The width of an exit door should be the least clear width measured between the vertical members of the door frame. The width of a required staircase, staircase landing, passage or corridor comprising an exit route should be measured between the finished surfaces of the walls or of the inner sides of any balustrade and should not be decreased by the introduction of any projections other than handrails the projection of which should not exceed 90mm. The Table shows the minimum requirement on the assumption that doors can be readily and freely opened by occupants in case of fire. <p>Table B3</p> <p>Table B3: Discharge Value of a Required Staircase in a Non-Sprinkler Protected Building</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th rowspan="2">No. of storeys served</th> <th colspan="6">Width of required staircase</th> </tr> <tr> <th>1050mm but under 1200mm</th> <th>1200mm but under 1350mm</th> <th>1350mm but under 1500mm</th> <th>1500mm but under 1600mm</th> <th>1600mm but under 1700mm</th> <th>1700mm to 1800mm</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>1</td><td>210</td><td>240</td><td>270</td><td>300</td><td>320</td><td>340</td></tr> <tr><td>2</td><td>242</td><td>278</td><td>315</td><td>351</td><td>377</td><td>402</td></tr> <tr><td>3</td><td>274</td><td>316</td><td>360</td><td>402</td><td>434</td><td>464</td></tr> <tr><td>4</td><td>306</td><td>354</td><td>405</td><td>453</td><td>491</td><td>526</td></tr> <tr><td>5</td><td>338</td><td>392</td><td>450</td><td>504</td><td>548</td><td>588</td></tr> <tr><td>6</td><td>370</td><td>430</td><td>495</td><td>555</td><td>605</td><td>650</td></tr> <tr><td>7</td><td>402</td><td>468</td><td>540</td><td>606</td><td>662</td><td>712</td></tr> <tr><td>8</td><td>434</td><td>506</td><td>585</td><td>657</td><td>719</td><td>774</td></tr> <tr><td>9</td><td>466</td><td>544</td><td>630</td><td>708</td><td>776</td><td>836</td></tr> <tr><td>10</td><td>498</td><td>582</td><td>675</td><td>759</td><td>833</td><td>898</td></tr> <tr><td>Each additional storey add</td><td>32</td><td>38</td><td>45</td><td>51</td><td>57</td><td>62</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Note:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> The discharge value of a required staircase having a width of more than 1800mm may be obtained by using linear projection from the table. <p>Table B4</p> <p>Table B4: Discharge Value of a Required Staircase in a Sprinkler Protected Building</p>	Occupant Capacity of room, fire compartment or storey (No. of persons)	Minimum No. of exit doors or exit routes	Minimum total width (in mm)		Minimum Width (in mm) of each		Exit doors	Exit routes	Exit door	Exit route	4-30	1			750	1050	31-200	2	1750	2100	850	1050	201-300	2	2500	2500	1050	1050	301-500	2	3000	3000	1050	1050	501-750	3	4500	4500	1200	1200	751-1000	4	6000	6000	1200	1200	1001-1250	5	7500	7500	1350	1350	1251-1500	6	9000	9000	1350	1350	1501-1750	7	10500	10500	1500	1500	1751-2000	8	12000	12000	1500	1500	2001-2250	9	13500	13500	1500	1500	2251-2500	10	15000	15000	1500	1500	2501-2750	11	16500	16500	1500	1500	2751-3000	12	18000	18000	1500	1500	No. of storeys served	Width of required staircase						1050mm but under 1200mm	1200mm but under 1350mm	1350mm but under 1500mm	1500mm but under 1600mm	1600mm but under 1700mm	1700mm to 1800mm	1	210	240	270	300	320	340	2	242	278	315	351	377	402	3	274	316	360	402	434	464	4	306	354	405	453	491	526	5	338	392	450	504	548	588	6	370	430	495	555	605	650	7	402	468	540	606	662	712	8	434	506	585	657	719	774	9	466	544	630	708	776	836	10	498	582	675	759	833	898	Each additional storey add	32	38	45	51	57	62	
Occupant Capacity of room, fire compartment or storey (No. of persons)	Minimum No. of exit doors or exit routes	Minimum total width (in mm)				Minimum Width (in mm) of each																																																																																																																																																																																						
		Exit doors	Exit routes	Exit door	Exit route																																																																																																																																																																																							
4-30	1			750	1050																																																																																																																																																																																							
31-200	2	1750	2100	850	1050																																																																																																																																																																																							
201-300	2	2500	2500	1050	1050																																																																																																																																																																																							
301-500	2	3000	3000	1050	1050																																																																																																																																																																																							
501-750	3	4500	4500	1200	1200																																																																																																																																																																																							
751-1000	4	6000	6000	1200	1200																																																																																																																																																																																							
1001-1250	5	7500	7500	1350	1350																																																																																																																																																																																							
1251-1500	6	9000	9000	1350	1350																																																																																																																																																																																							
1501-1750	7	10500	10500	1500	1500																																																																																																																																																																																							
1751-2000	8	12000	12000	1500	1500																																																																																																																																																																																							
2001-2250	9	13500	13500	1500	1500																																																																																																																																																																																							
2251-2500	10	15000	15000	1500	1500																																																																																																																																																																																							
2501-2750	11	16500	16500	1500	1500																																																																																																																																																																																							
2751-3000	12	18000	18000	1500	1500																																																																																																																																																																																							
No. of storeys served	Width of required staircase																																																																																																																																																																																											
	1050mm but under 1200mm	1200mm but under 1350mm	1350mm but under 1500mm	1500mm but under 1600mm	1600mm but under 1700mm	1700mm to 1800mm																																																																																																																																																																																						
1	210	240	270	300	320	340																																																																																																																																																																																						
2	242	278	315	351	377	402																																																																																																																																																																																						
3	274	316	360	402	434	464																																																																																																																																																																																						
4	306	354	405	453	491	526																																																																																																																																																																																						
5	338	392	450	504	548	588																																																																																																																																																																																						
6	370	430	495	555	605	650																																																																																																																																																																																						
7	402	468	540	606	662	712																																																																																																																																																																																						
8	434	506	585	657	719	774																																																																																																																																																																																						
9	466	544	630	708	776	836																																																																																																																																																																																						
10	498	582	675	759	833	898																																																																																																																																																																																						
Each additional storey add	32	38	45	51	57	62																																																																																																																																																																																						

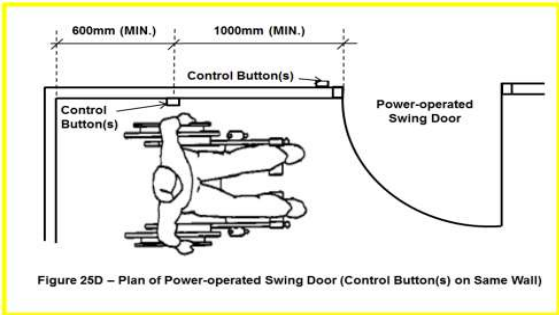
DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks																																																																																										
	Manuals	Page/Table																																																																																												
1050 mm	Code of Practice for Fire Safety in Buildings 2011	Subsection B8 – Exits from Storeys	<p>Table B2: Discharge Value of a Required Staircase in a Sprinkler Protected Building</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th rowspan="2">No. of storeys served</th> <th colspan="6">Width of required staircase</th> </tr> <tr> <th>1050mm] but under 1200mm</th> <th>1200mm but under 1350mm</th> <th>1350mm but under 1500mm</th> <th>1500mm but under 1600mm</th> <th>1600mm but under 1700mm</th> <th>1700mm to 1800mm</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>1</td><td>420</td><td>480</td><td>540</td><td>600</td><td>640</td><td>680</td></tr> <tr><td>2</td><td>452</td><td>518</td><td>585</td><td>651</td><td>697</td><td>742</td></tr> <tr><td>3</td><td>484</td><td>556</td><td>630</td><td>702</td><td>754</td><td>804</td></tr> <tr><td>4</td><td>516</td><td>594</td><td>675</td><td>753</td><td>811</td><td>866</td></tr> <tr><td>5</td><td>548</td><td>632</td><td>720</td><td>804</td><td>868</td><td>928</td></tr> <tr><td>6</td><td>580</td><td>670</td><td>765</td><td>855</td><td>925</td><td>990</td></tr> <tr><td>7</td><td>612</td><td>708</td><td>810</td><td>906</td><td>982</td><td>1052</td></tr> <tr><td>8</td><td>644</td><td>746</td><td>855</td><td>957</td><td>1039</td><td>1114</td></tr> <tr><td>9</td><td>676</td><td>784</td><td>900</td><td>1008</td><td>1096</td><td>1176</td></tr> <tr><td>10</td><td>708</td><td>822</td><td>945</td><td>1059</td><td>1153</td><td>1238</td></tr> <tr> <td>Each additional storey add</td> <td>32</td> <td>38</td> <td>45</td> <td>51</td> <td>57</td> <td>62</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Note:</p> <p>1. The discharge value of a required staircase having a width more than 1800mm may be obtained by using linear projection from the table.</p>	No. of storeys served	Width of required staircase						1050mm] but under 1200mm	1200mm but under 1350mm	1350mm but under 1500mm	1500mm but under 1600mm	1600mm but under 1700mm	1700mm to 1800mm	1	420	480	540	600	640	680	2	452	518	585	651	697	742	3	484	556	630	702	754	804	4	516	594	675	753	811	866	5	548	632	720	804	868	928	6	580	670	765	855	925	990	7	612	708	810	906	982	1052	8	644	746	855	957	1039	1114	9	676	784	900	1008	1096	1176	10	708	822	945	1059	1153	1238	Each additional storey add	32	38	45	51	57	62	
No. of storeys served	Width of required staircase																																																																																													
	1050mm] but under 1200mm	1200mm but under 1350mm	1350mm but under 1500mm	1500mm but under 1600mm	1600mm but under 1700mm	1700mm to 1800mm																																																																																								
1	420	480	540	600	640	680																																																																																								
2	452	518	585	651	697	742																																																																																								
3	484	556	630	702	754	804																																																																																								
4	516	594	675	753	811	866																																																																																								
5	548	632	720	804	868	928																																																																																								
6	580	670	765	855	925	990																																																																																								
7	612	708	810	906	982	1052																																																																																								
8	644	746	855	957	1039	1114																																																																																								
9	676	784	900	1008	1096	1176																																																																																								
10	708	822	945	1059	1153	1238																																																																																								
Each additional storey add	32	38	45	51	57	62																																																																																								
1050 mm	Code of Practice for Fire Safety in Buildings 2011	Subsection B21 - Exit Requirements for Use Classification 5a	<p>Clause B21.1</p> <p>Buildings of Use Classification 5a should be provided with exits as follows:</p> <p>(a) if the Use Classification 5a is located at a storey less than 12m above ground floor level, Table B2 should be complied with;</p> <p>(b) if any part of Use Classification 5a is located at a storey 12m or more above ground floor level, Table B5 should be complied with.</p> <p>Table B5: Exit Width for Use Classification 5a Located at 12m or more above Ground Floor Level</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Occupant Capacity</th> <th>Minimum Number of Exits</th> <th>Minimum Total Width of Exit Route (mm)</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>31-200</td><td>2</td><td>2400</td></tr> <tr><td>201-300</td><td>2</td><td>2600</td></tr> <tr><td>301-500</td><td>2</td><td>4300</td></tr> <tr><td>501-750</td><td>3</td><td>6400</td></tr> <tr><td>751-1000</td><td>4</td><td>8500</td></tr> <tr><td>1001-1250</td><td>5</td><td>10400</td></tr> <tr><td>1251-1500</td><td>6</td><td>12500</td></tr> <tr><td>1501-1750</td><td>7</td><td>14600</td></tr> <tr><td>1751-2000</td><td>8</td><td>16700</td></tr> <tr><td>2001-2500</td><td>10</td><td>20800</td></tr> <tr><td>2501-3000</td><td>12</td><td>24900</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Notes:</p> <p>1. Buildings with total occupant capacity of Use Classification 5a over 3000 persons, the minimum number of exits and total width of exit routes required shall be determined by the Building Authority.</p> <p>2. Minimum door width is 1050mm in accordance with Table B2, subject to compliance with other requirements in this Part, especially Subsections B5, B7 and B8.</p>	Occupant Capacity	Minimum Number of Exits	Minimum Total Width of Exit Route (mm)	31-200	2	2400	201-300	2	2600	301-500	2	4300	501-750	3	6400	751-1000	4	8500	1001-1250	5	10400	1251-1500	6	12500	1501-1750	7	14600	1751-2000	8	16700	2001-2500	10	20800	2501-3000	12	24900																																																							
Occupant Capacity	Minimum Number of Exits	Minimum Total Width of Exit Route (mm)																																																																																												
31-200	2	2400																																																																																												
201-300	2	2600																																																																																												
301-500	2	4300																																																																																												
501-750	3	6400																																																																																												
751-1000	4	8500																																																																																												
1001-1250	5	10400																																																																																												
1251-1500	6	12500																																																																																												
1501-1750	7	14600																																																																																												
1751-2000	8	16700																																																																																												
2001-2500	10	20800																																																																																												
2501-3000	12	24900																																																																																												
		Subsection B30 – Temporary Refuge Spaces	<p>Clause B30.3</p> <p><i>Any door from the common area leading to a temporary refuge space should have a clear width of not less than 850mm or such width as required under Table B2, whichever is greater; and door handle at not less than 950mm and not more than 1050mm above the finished floor level, measured from the top surface of the grip should be provided to one side of the door.</i></p>																																																																																											

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
1050 mm	Code of Practice for Fire Safety in Buildings 2011	Subsection D18 – Construction of Access Staircase in a Firefighting and Rescue Stairway	<p>Clause D18.1</p> <p>Every access staircase in a firefighting and rescue stairway should:</p> <p>(a) have a clear width of not less than 1050mm and a clear headroom of not less than 2000mm;</p> <p>(b) be arranged in straight flights without winders and each flight should consist of not more than 16 risers nor less than 2 risers. Treads should be not less than 225mm wide, measured clear of nosings, and risers should be not more than 175mm high;</p> <p>(c) be provided with landings at the top and bottom of each flight with a minimum dimension of not less than the width of the flight and no door should at any part of its swing reduce the effective width or effective radius of such landings; and</p> <p>(d) be provided with handrails on each side of the staircase at a height of not less than 850mm and not more than 1100mm above the steps or landings. The handrails should not project so as to reduce the clear width of the staircase by more than 90mm for each handrail and should be continuous throughout each flight of the staircase but need not be carried round a landing or half landing</p>	
		Division 4 ---ACCESS ROUTE	<p>Requirements for Access Route Width</p> <p>(1) The clear width of an access route shall be not less than 1050 mm.</p>	
		Division 5 ---RAMPS	<p>Width</p> <p>A ramp shall not be less than 1050 mm in width</p>	
		Design Manual Barrier Free Access 2008	<p>Division 9 --- CORRIDORS, LOBBIES AND PATHS</p> <p>Manoeuvring Space</p> <p>Space shall be allowed for manoeuvring wheelchairs in corridor, lobby, path and similar areas as follows:</p> <p>(1) area shall have a clear width of not less than 1050 mm;</p> <p>(2) a space not less than 1500 mm x 1500 mm shall be provided within 3500 mm of every dead end;</p> <p>(3) any lobby in a corridor shall have a length of not less than 1200 mm, excluding space for door swings;</p> <p>(4) a level area, extending not less than 1200 mm beyond the swings of the doors and not less than 1500 mm in width shall be provided on both sides of every entrance of a building; and</p> <p>(5) this paragraph shall not apply to lobby which lead to staircase only.</p> <p>For the purpose of this paragraph, “dead end” is a corridor, lobby or path where the means of exit for persons with a disability is in one direction only.</p>	
		Division 10 ---DOORS	<p>Handles</p> <p>Door handle shall not be less than 950 mm and not more than 1050 mm above the finished floor level, measured from the top surface of the grip .</p>	

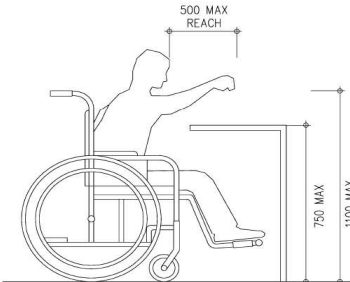
DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
1050 mm	Design Manual Barrier Free Access 2008	Division 11 ---TOILETS AND W.C. CUBICLES	Flushing Controls <i>Flushing control shall be mounted on the wide side of the cubicle at a height between 600 mm to 1050 mm above the finished floor level</i> and shall be hand-operated or automatic. Hand-operated controls shall be capable of being operated with one hand and shall not require tight grasping, pinching or twisting of the wrist. The force required shall not be greater than 22 N.	
	Practice Note for Authorized Persons, Registered Structural Engineers and Registered Geotechnical Engineers APP-23	Hoardings, Covered Walkways and Gantries (including Temporary Access for Construction Vehicles) Part IX of Building (Planning) Regulations	Appendix A (PNAP APP-23) Highways Department and Transport Department Standard Requirements for Hoardings / Covered Walkways (6) The maximum insertion of footing into public pedestrian pavement shall be limited to 450mm. Any concrete plinth sitting on pavement shall not be more than 250mm in thickness and not more than 1000mm in height, and the minimum clear spacing between two concrete plinths shall not be less than 1100mm. The exposed faces of the concrete plinth shall be of smooth surface and any exposed edges and corners shall be chamfered.	
	Practice Note for Authorized Persons, Registered Structural Engineers and Registered Geotechnical Engineers APP-41	Buildings to be Planned for Use by Persons with a Disability Regulation 72 of Building (Planning) Regulations Design Manual: Barrier Free Access 2008	3. Figure 24 (Division 11)@*	
Practice Note for Authorized Persons, Registered Structural Engineers and Registered Geotechnical Engineers APP-41	Buildings to be Planned for Use by Persons with a Disability Regulation 72 of Building (Planning) Regulations Design Manual: Barrier Free Access 2008	<p>*ALL DIMENSIONS ARE IN mm DIMENSIONS PRINTED IN BOLD FORM DENOTE OBLIGATORY REQUIREMENT DIMENSIONS PRINTED IN ITALIC FORM DENOTE RECOMMENDED REQUIREMENT (Opposite - Handed Layout is Acceptable)</p> <p>Figure 24 – Accessible Toilet</p>		

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
1050 mm	Practice Note for Authorized Persons, Registered Structural Engineers and Registered Geotechnical Engineers APP-41	Division 11 of Chapter 4*	<p>Amendments</p> <p>(ea) A power-operated door should be designed as follows:</p> <p>(i) push pad type control buttons having a minimum dimension of 20 mm should be used to open or lock the door;</p> <p>(ii) after the door is open, the door should be automatically closed after a minimum of 10-second time lapse. An audible signal should be provided to signify the door opening and closing action;</p> <p>(iii) a detection device should be provided to re-open the door in the event of hitting any obstacle. The device should be positioned at a height between 300 mm to 400 mm above the finished floor level;</p> <p>(iv) a lock button should be provided inside the toilet. The locking device should be able to be released from the outside manually upon activation of an emergency break glass unit installed between 1800 mm to 2000 mm above the finished floor level outside the toilet. The maximum horizontal force for opening the door manually should comply with the requirements stipulated in paragraph 43 in Division 10;</p>	
	Practice Note for Authorized Persons, Registered Structural Engineers and Registered Geotechnical Engineers APP-41	Division 11 of Chapter 4*	<p>(v) in case the lock button is pressed before the door-closing action is complete, the door should still be able to be locked;</p> <p>(vi) an audible message should be provided in English, Cantonese and Putonghua to inform the user after the door is locked;</p> <p>(vii) an indicator activated by the locking device signifying the toilet is being occupied should be provided both inside and outside the toilet;</p> <p>(viii) the door should be provided with vertical grab rails fixed on both sides of the door at the height of 800 mm from the finished floor level (measuring from the bottom of the grab rails) and with a grip space of not less than 30 mm clear of the door. Grab rails should not be less than 32 mm and not more than 40 mm in external diameter and not less than 600 mm in length;</p> <p>(ix) the door including control buttons should have a minimum luminous contrast of 30% with the door frame and their surrounding finishes;</p> <p>(x) a back-up emergency power supply should be provided for at least 20 minutes in power failure situation;</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
1000 mm	Practice Note for Authorized Persons, Registered Structural Engineers and Registered Geotechnical Engineers APP-41		<p>(xi) the control buttons should be installed at the wall adjacent to the door opening such that the user will not be interfered by the door movement. For a door swinging into an area with internal corner, the buttons should be located at least 600 mm from the internal corner of a room and the button should have a clear 1000 mm minimum distance from the swing of the door;</p> <p>(xii) the control buttons should be located at not less than 900 mm and not more than 1200 mm above the finished floor level;</p> <p>(xiii) separate door open and lock buttons should be provided inside the toilet and placed together;</p> <p>(xiv) Braille and tactile marking should be provided to the control buttons in compliance with the requirements stipulated in paragraphs 80(5) and 80(6) in Division 19 and Figures 25A and 25B; and</p> <p>(xv) user instructions in Chinese, English and Braille on how to open and lock the door should be provided adjacent to the control buttons inside the toilet</p>	
			 <p>Figure 25A - Elevation of Power-operated Sliding Door (View from Outside of Accessible Toilet)</p>	 <p>Figure 25B - Elevation of Power-operated Sliding Door (View from Inside of Accessible Toilet)</p>
	Practice Note for Authorized Persons, Registered Structural Engineers and	Division 11 of Chapter 4*	 <p>Figure 25C - Plan of Power-operated Swing Door (Control Button(s) on Separate Walls)</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
1000 mm	Registered Geotechnical Engineers APP-41		 <p>Figure 25D – Plan of Power-operated Swing Door (Control Button(s) on Same Wall)</p>	
	Practice Note for Authorized Persons, Registered Structural Engineers and Registered Geotechnical Engineers APP-68	Design and Construction of Cantilevered Reinforced Concrete Structures	<p>Appendix A (PNAP APP-68) Guidance Notes on Design and Construction of Cantilevered Reinforced Concrete Structures General Requirements</p> <p>1. The design of cantilevered structures should satisfy the following requirements:- (a) For cantilever of clear span more than 1000 mm, a beam-and-slab type of arrangement should be used instead of pure slab cantilever where practicable.</p> <p>2. The construction of cantilevered structures should satisfy the following requirements:- (a) All cantilevered structures should be cast monolithically with and at the same time as the directly supporting members. Construction joints should not be located along the external edge of the supporting members. In case this is unavoidable, any alternative construction method must be submitted for prior approval. Such method should ensure that the finished product would be able to attain a structural strength no less than that provided by monolithic construction, and that it would not allow the ingress of water through the joint.</p>	
		Temporary Refuge Spaces (TRS) and Wider Corridor / Lobby If TRS (emergency use only) are provided within the Fireman's LiftLobby (naturally ventilated) of Typical Residential Floors, please clarify which calculation for widen lift lobbies exemption shall be used as perbelow diagrams:	The BD confirmed that Scenario 3 should be adopted in calculating the exempted GFA for the provision of a wider common corridor / lobby under JPN 1.	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
1050 mm	APSEC Discussion Forum on 10 November 2014	<p>Scenario 1 Exemption portion in front of TRS = Overall width (2450mm) - 1650mm = 800mm</p> <p>Scenario 2 Exemption portion in front of TRS = Overall width (2450mm) - TRS (750mm) - 1650mm = 50mm</p> <p>Scenario 3 Exemption portion in front of TRS = Overall width (2450mm) - TRS (750mm) - <i>width for required exit route (1050mm)</i> = 650mm</p>		
		<p>Division 19 ---LIFTS Obligatory Design Requirements</p>	<p>78. Special Requirements for Accessible Lifts (1) Every floor of a building shall be accessible by at least one passenger lift which shall fully comply with all the obligatory design requirements as stipulated in this section and have direct access to main lift lobby. All other passenger lifts in the building must comply with paragraphs 79 & 80. A lift shall have minimum internal car dimensions of 1200 mm x 1100 mm wide, with a minimum clear entrance width of 850 mm, and shall have handrails extending to within 150 mm of the corners at the rear and sides of the car. The top of the gripping surface of the handrails shall be at a height of 850 mm – 950 mm, with a space of 30 mm - 50 mm between the handrails and wall. (see Figure 40)</p>	


DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
1100mm	Design Manual Barrier Free Access 2008	5.5 VERTICAL LIFTING PLATFORMS	<p>A vertical lifting platform is a mechanical lift with a platform and walls which provides vertical circulation between two levels.</p> <p>A vertical lifting platform shall be designed to facilitate persons with ambulant disabilities and wheelchair users for the vertical transportation from one level to another in a building.</p> <p>BEST PRACTICE SECTION</p> <p>B. Recommended Design Requirements</p> <p>(a) Where it is impractical to provide a passenger lift or a ramp, a self-operated vertical lifting platform should be considered as a reasonable alternative for vertical circulation for wheelchair users, the vertical lifting platform should have the following provisions (see Figure 45): Door</p> <p>(i) minimum clear entrance width of 900 mm ;</p> <p>(ii) Single door or 2-door design; Platform size</p> <p>(iii) minimum size of 1100 mm (wide) x 1400 mm (deep);</p>	
			<p>Safety Barrier</p> <p>(iv) provision of safety barriers of not less than 1100mm in height;</p> <p>(v) provision of a flip-up ramp if a door is not provided, to act as a safety barrier and serves as an access ramp for wheelchair users;</p>	
		Appendix A Anthropometrics	<p>A.3 Forward reach of a wheelchair user</p> <p>The maximum forward reach, without obstruction, is 1200 mm from the floor and the minimum forward reach is 400 mm from the floor as shown in Figures A5 and A7.</p> <p>The maximum forward reach over an obstruction 500 mm deep is 1100 mm from the floor as shown in Figure A6.</p>	
1100mm		Appendix A Anthropometrics	 <p>500 MAX REACH</p> <p>750 MAX</p> <p>1100 MAX</p>	
			Figure A6 - Forward Reach Over Obstruction	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
1100mm	The Code of Practice on Design for Safety – External Maintenance	PART 3 - DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS	<p>2. Specific Requirements</p> <p>2.2 Maintenance access window</p> <p>2.2.1 Access opening of a maintenance access window shall have a clearance of not less than 460 mm wide by 1100 mm high to enable the operation for M&R including material delivery . The sill of the window shall at a height of not less than 1.1 m above the internal floor finished level of the adjoining floor . One or more permanent cast-in anchors shall be provided at the external wall for anchoring of the fall arresting devices by each worker before climbing out to the external.</p> <p>2.2.2 The cast-in anchors shall be located at a position which is close to the maintenance access windows and readily accessible by the worker and at a height of not less than 1.5 m and not more than 1.8 m above floor finished level of the adjoining floor . The maintenance access window when opened shall not obstruct the worker from using the cast-in anchors.</p>	
		APPENDIX C REQUIREMENTS OF DESIGN AND SAFETY PROVISIONS FOR THE AIR-CONDITIONER PLATFORM	<p>Access</p> <p>1. The access openings shall normally have a clearance of not less than 460 mm by 1100 mm , and in no case less than the size of the air-conditioner (AC) to be installed. The bottom side of such openings shall be located not higher than 1300 mm from the finished floor level of the adjoining AC platform for the maintenance and repair (M&R) works.</p>	
	Code of Practice for Fire Safety in Buildings 2011	Subsection B21 - Exit Requirements for Use Classification 5a	<p>Subsection B25 – Exit Route Details</p> <p>Clause B25.5</p> <p>Where tiered seating is provided and is located such that persons could fall more than 1000mm, a guard rail should be provided at a height of at least 1100mm to prevent falling</p>	
	Code of Practice for Fire Safety in Buildings 2011	Subsection D18 – Construction of Access Staircase in a Firefighting and Rescue Stairway	<p>Clause D18.1</p> <p>Every access staircase in a firefighting and rescue stairway should:</p> <p>(d) be provided with handrails on each side of the staircase at a height of not less than 850mm and not more than 1100mm above the steps or landings . The handrails should not project so as to reduce the clear width of the staircase by more than 90mm for each handrail and should be continuous throughout each flight of the staircase but need not be carried round a landing or half landing.</p>	
		Subsection B14 – Construction of Required Staircases	<p>Clause B14.6</p> <p>A handrail should be provided on each side of the required staircase. Every such handrail should:</p> <p>(a) be at a height not less than 850mm nor more than 1100mm;</p> <p>(b) not project so as to reduce the clear width of the required staircase by more than 90mm, for each handrail; and</p> <p>(c) be continuous throughout each flight, but need not be carried round a landing or half landing except in the case of a premises of Use Classification 5a</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
1100mm	2013 APSEC Discussion Forum on 2 August 2013		The BD advised that while an A/C platform following <i>PNAP APP-19</i> (i.e. with a reasonable size and projection not more than 750mm) might be acceptable for not counting for site coverage and plot ratio, <i>the acceptability of shielding for A/C outdoor units above 1100mm above the A/C platform surface would be considered on a case-by-case basis as the A/C platform including the shielding should not be too exaggerated or excessive in scale to be regarded as defeating the purposes of the PNAP APP-19</i> . The BD remarks that if the shielding would be provided for the full height of the storey then it is not considered as A/C platform and will not be accepted as such.	
	1/2014 APSEC Discussion Forum on 10 January 2014	<i>A/C Platform Is it allowed to provide shielding for A/C outdoor units installed at a level above about 1100mm above the A/C platform surface?</i>	(a) The BD explained that <i>the requirements of deadend travel distance and maximum travel distance for buildings in Use Classifications 1 and 2 had been stated in Clauses B11.2(a) and B 11.3(a)(i) of the FS Code 2011. For cases not involving balcony approach of the above use classifications, the total maximum travel distance from any point within a unit to the nearest required staircase achievable could be 48m.</i>	

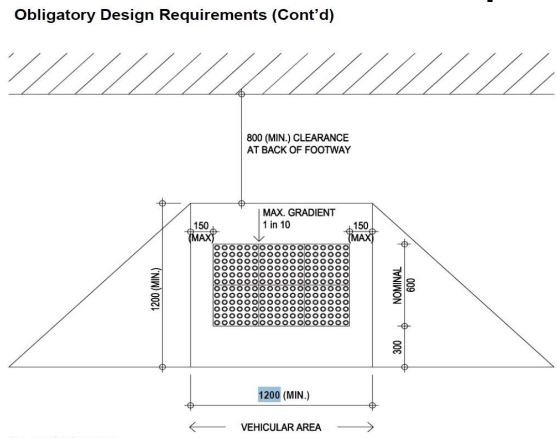
DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
1100mm		<p>to the nearest required staircase...” Together with Clause B11.2 regarding deadend travel distance for the same use classification (i.e. 24m from any point within a flat to its exit door), it is apparent that the maximum total travel distance permitted will then be 48m (24m + 24m), providing that travel in 2 different directions at a point 15m from the flat exit door is also fulfilled. However, in a recent project, the case-officer has insisted that the maximum travel distance from the farthest point in a flat to the nearest required staircase is only 24m. Please confirm that the interpretation in the former paragraph (total maximum travel distance being 48 m) is correct.</p>		
	1/2014 APSEC Discussion Forum on 10 January 2014	<p>(b) Smoke Outlets for Basement Under Clause C14.2(a), it is stated that “smoke outlets... be not more than 30m apart and situated along the street frontages or adjacent to external walls”, and under Clause C14.2(b), it is stated that “smoke outlets... be evenly distributed around the perimeter of the building...” Please clarify if the aforesaid separation requirements of not more than 30m apart for the smoke outlets apply only to the “external outlets” and do not apply to the “internal smoke intake openings” within the basement.</p>	<p>(b) The BD clarified that the said separation requirement of not more than 30m apart for smoke outlets applied only to the external discharge points but not to the internal smoke intake openings within the basement. In addition, the BD highlighted that the internal smoke intake openings within the basement should be evenly distributed and provided to every fire compartment and met the aggregated area requirements and other requirements in Clause C14.2 of the FS Code 2011 unless a dynamic smoke extraction system was to be provided in accordance with Clause C14.3 of the FS Code 2011.</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
		<p>(c) Fire Separation in Same Compartment and Occupancy In an institutional project, the case officer has equested that fire separation e.g. fire-rated doors/fire shutters be provided between common corridor/atrium and the adjacent same institutional uses in the same compartment (e.g. computer room, multi-purpose room, staff office, multi-media seminar/conference rooms, meeting room, etc.), as the officer opines that different usages of spaces have to be separated with fire-resistant construction. Please confirm that the requested fire separation is not necessary as the mentioned rooms and the common corridor/atrium are within the same compartment.</p>	<p>(c) The BD advised that a school building as a whole could be considered as an educational establishment and if under the control of one operator, could be considered as under single occupancy. As such, multi-purpose rooms/classrooms etc. should all be considered as under the same use classification and a single occupancy. The BD requested HKIA to provide information on specific uses where fire separation was uncertain if necessary.</p>	
		<p>(d) Discharge Width of Required Staircase In a residential project, our proposal to have different widths for the 2 required staircases of the residential tower (one being 1100mm wide and the other 1500mm) has been rejected, despite their compliance to the requirements of total discharge value and minimum individual and total width of staircases</p>	<p>(d) The BD confirmed that it was acceptable to include all required staircases into the calculation for minimum total width of exit routes if the width of these required staircases were not in excess of 50% above the width of the narrowest staircase according to Clause B8.1(b) of the FS Code 2011. The BD further advised that normally it might not be necessary to determine the minimum width of required staircases by dividing the total discharge value by the number of staircases and it was acceptable to have required staircases at different sizes provided that the width of the required staircases would satisfy the requirements in Table B2 of the FS Code 2011.</p>	

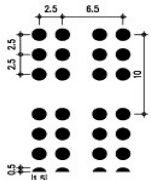
DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
1100mm	1/2014 APSEC Discussion Forum on 10 January 2014	<p>as stipulated in Clause B12.1 and B8.1. Further, we have been requested to determine the minimum width of required staircases by dividing the total discharge value by the number of staircases. Please confirm that it is allowed to provide required staircases of different widths, and that it is not necessary to determine the minimum width of required staircases in the aforementioned way.</p>	<p>Clause B8.1</p> <p>Every building, except those buildings permitted under Clause B6.1 to have only one required staircase, should be so constructed that there are available from each storey not less than 2 exit routes or such greater number as may be required by Table B2. The width of each exit route and the total width of all the exit routes should be not less than the width shown in Table B2 according to the occupant capacity and the number of exit routes provided. Provided that:</p> <p>(a) this requirement should apply to only one of the storeys of a maisonette; and</p> <p>(b) where two or more exit routes (required by Table B2 to serve a storey) vary in width, any width of an exit route in such group in excess of 50% above the width of the narrowest exit route in such group should not be included in the calculation for the minimum total width of exit routes as required by column 4 of Table B2.</p> <hr/> <p>Subsection B12 - Discharge Value and Width of Required Staircase</p> <p>Clause B12.1</p> <p>The required staircases serving the storeys of a building above the ground storey should have a total discharge value of not less than the total occupant capacity of those storeys assessed in accordance with Subsection B4.</p>	
	3/2015 APSEC Discussion Forum on 29 May 2015	<p>Protective Barrier and Rim of Bathtub In the past, the rim of bathtub was not considered in determining the height of the protective barrier. Openable windows next to bathtubs have not been a concern for safety in the past. The latest PNAP APP-110 specifically states that 75mm wide protruding width will be regarded as an adjoining floor level. We would like to seek clarification from the BD whether the bathtub rim must now also be scrutinized under the new PNAP APP-100 as well when there is an openable window above.. A typical arrangement is attached.</p>	<p>The BD noted that a bathtub was a sanitary fitment and the bathtub rim should not be regarded as part of a floor. People should not be expected to stand on the bathtub rim. Providing protective barrier up to 1100mm above the bathtub rim in front of openable window normally would not be needed.</p> <p>On the other hand, when the people using the bathtub, the opening of the window should be not less than 1100mm from where the person would stand. In addition, as sanitary fitments might be relocated by future owners, the window openings in a bathroom or toilet should in no case contravene regulation 3A of the Building (Planning) Regulations. .</p> <p>The BD reminded that when there would be a drying rack / planter box or other similar features requiring access from the window opening, a protective barrier should be provided such that it would be 1100mm high from the point where people might stand on in accordance with PNAP APP-110.</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
1200mm	Building (Planning) Regulations Cap. 123F		<p>45. Kitchens</p> <p>(1) Every domestic building, and unless exempted by the Building Authority any part of a domestic building which is intended to be separately let for dwelling purposes, shall be provided with kitchen accommodation.</p> <p>(2) The internal surface of every kitchen to a height of at least 1.2 m from floor level shall be faced with tiles or rendered in cement mortar, not less than 12.5 mm in thickness, or other non-absorbent material. (L.N. 294 of 1976)</p> <p>(3) Every kitchen shall be provided with a—</p> <p>(a) properly constructed fireplace or cooking slab unless the cooking is to be done by gas, oil or electricity;</p> <p>(b) sink and fittings for the supply of water.</p>	
1200mm	Code of Practice for Fire Safety in Buildings 2011	Subsection B30 – Temporary Refuge Spaces	<p>Clause B30.4</p> <p>A closed-circuit television and direct intercom link, both backed up by emergency power for at least 1 hour, should be provided to every temporary refuge space for communication with the management office of the building. The height of the intercom link shall not be less than 900mm and not more than 1200mm above the floor level.</p>	
	Design Manual Barrier Free Access 2008	Division 3 --- CARPARKS	<p>9. Requirements for Accessible Parking Spaces</p> <p>(1) The parking spaces reserved for persons with a disability shall be located in proximity and with an accessible route to the lobby with an accessible lift or entrance.</p> <p>(2) The minimum width for a parking space for persons with a disability shall be 3500 mm.</p> <p>(3) Where a common loading/unloading area is provided between two parking spaces for persons with a disability, such parking spaces shall be not less than 2500 mm in width.</p> <p>(4) The common loading/unloading area shall be of at least 1200 mm wide and be marked with yellow hatched markings as shown in Figure 4.</p>	
		<p>The diagram illustrates two accessible parking spaces, labeled 2011 and 2010, separated by a common loading/unloading area. The total height of the spaces is 5000 mm. Each parking space is 2500 mm wide. The common loading/unloading area between them is 1200 mm wide and marked with yellow hatching. The distance from the center of each parking space to the center of the common area is 1500 mm. The overall width of the two spaces and the common area is 5200 mm (2500 + 1200 + 2500). The overall height is 5000 mm.</p>		

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks															
	Manuals	Page/Table																	
1200mm	Design Manual Barrier Free Access 2008	Division 5 ---RAMPS	<p>18. Requirements for Ramps Combination of ramps of minor rise as stated in paragraph 17 shall not be permitted. (1) If the gradient of a ramp is 1 in 20 or steeper, the ramp shall be provided with : a) a landing of not less than 1200 mm long for each 10 m length of horizontal run or part thereof; (see Figure 7) (b) handrails complying with Division 8 on both sides; and (c) tactile warning strips at the head, foot and landings (see Figure 7). (2) The above items shall not apply to ramp access to lift or ramp with a length less than 300 mm.</p>																
		BEST PRACTICE SECTION	<p>B. Recommended Design Requirements (a) A ramp should have a running slope 1:12 (8.33%) to 1:20 (5%).</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Maximum slope</th> <th>Maximum length</th> <th>Maximum rise</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1:20 i.e., 5.00%</td> <td>10000 mm</td> <td>500 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1:16 i.e., 6.25%</td> <td>6400 mm</td> <td>400 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1:14 i.e., 7.14%</td> <td>4200 mm</td> <td>300 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1:12 i.e., 8.33%</td> <td>1800 mm</td> <td>150 mm</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>(b) Width should be at least 1200 mm to enable a wheelchair to turn or preferably at least 1500 mm to allow 2 wheelchairs to pass. (c) A ramp should have slip-resistant surface with a minimum "static coefficient of friction" of "Very Good" grading (see Appendix C). (d) Tactile warning strips at the head, foot and landing should have a minimum luminous contrast of 70% with the adjoining surfaces. (e) The floor and wall along a ramp should have a minimum luminous contrast of 30%.</p>	Maximum slope	Maximum length	Maximum rise	1:20 i.e., 5.00%	10000 mm	500 mm	1:16 i.e., 6.25%	6400 mm	400 mm	1:14 i.e., 7.14%	4200 mm	300 mm	1:12 i.e., 8.33%	1800 mm	150 mm	
		Maximum slope	Maximum length	Maximum rise															
1:20 i.e., 5.00%	10000 mm	500 mm																	
1:16 i.e., 6.25%	6400 mm	400 mm																	
1:14 i.e., 7.14%	4200 mm	300 mm																	
1:12 i.e., 8.33%	1800 mm	150 mm																	
Division 6 ---DROPPED KERBS A dropped kerb is a ramp built on a footpath or pavement to accommodate the change in level towards vehicular areas.	<p>21. Requirements Dropped kerb shall be constructed as follows: (a) not less than 1200 mm in length and 1200 mm in width; (b) with a clearance of at least 800 mm long at the back of the footway; (c) ramped at a gradient not steeper than 1:10; (d) with a level difference of not more than 15 mm with the vehicular areas; (e) provided with a tactile warning strip at 300 mm from the vehicular areas; and (f) provided with a tactile warning strip of the nominal width of 600 mm at the ramp.</p>																		

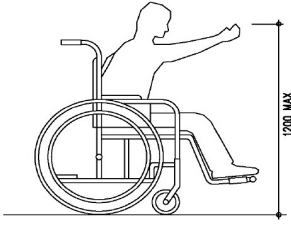
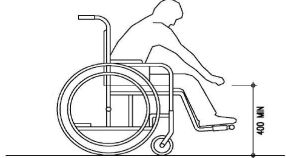
DATA	Related Requilations		Descriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
1200mm	Design Manual Barrier Free Access 2008	Division 6 ---DROPPED KERBS A dropped kerb is a ramp built on a footpath or pavement to accommodate the change in level towards vehicular areas.	Obligatory Design Requirements (Cont'd)  <p>*ALL DIMENSIONS ARE IN mm</p>	
		Division 9 ---CORRIDORS, LOBBIES AND PATHS	31. Manoeuvring Space Space shall be allowed for manoeuvring wheelchairs in corridor, lobby, path and similar areas as follows: (1) area shall have a clear width of not less than 1050 mm; (2) a space not less than 1500 mm x 1500 mm shall be provided within 3500 mm of every dead end; (3) any lobby in a corridor shall have a length of not less than 1200 mm, excluding space for door swings; (4) a level area, extending not less than 1200 mm beyond the swings of the doors and not less than 1500 mm in width shall be provided on both sides of every entrance of a building; and (5) this paragraph shall not apply to lobby which lead to staircase only. For the purpose of this paragraph, "dead end" is a corridor, lobby or path where the means of exit for persons with a disability is in one direction only.	
		BEST PRACTICE SECTION	B. Recommended Design Requirements Width (a) Path width should be more than 1200 mm to enable a wheelchair user to pass anyone who is on the same path or preferably at least 1500 mm to allow two wheelchairs to pass. At right angle turns, inside corner should be splayed or rounded to at least 300 mm radius. (see Figure 20)	

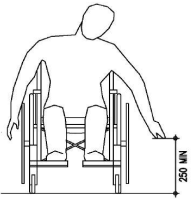
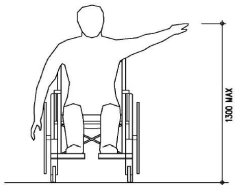
DATA	Related Regulations		Descriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
1200mm	Design Manual Barrier Free Access 2008	BEST PRACTICE SECTION	<p>A. A CLEAR WIDTH OF 1500mm WILL ALLOW TWO WHEELCHAIR USERS TO PASS EACH OTHER.</p> <p>B. DEPTH OF RECESS SHOULD NOT BE LESS THAN THE WIDTH OF THE DOOR LEAF.</p> <p>C. 900mm CLEAR SPACE WHERE DOORS OPEN INTO A CORRIDOR.</p> <p>D. A CLEAR WIDTH OF CORRIDOR SHOULD NOT BE LESS THAN 1200mm.</p> <p>*ALL DIMENSIONS ARE IN mm</p> <p>Figure 20 – Dimension and Space Allowance for Corridor in Building</p>	
		Division 11 ---TOILETS AND W.C. CUBICLES	<p>55. Urinals</p> <p>If more than one urinal is provided, at least one urinal shall</p> <p>(i) have a clear levelled space of not less than 800 mm wide x 1500 mm deep in front; and</p> <p>(ii) be wall hung urinal with a front rim not higher than 400 mm, and have vertical grab rails of not less than 32 mm and not more than 40mm in external diameter and of 600 mm length on both sides at a height of 1200 mm above the finished floor level for use by persons with ambulant disabilities. (see Figure 25)</p> <p>*ALL DIMENSIONS ARE IN mm</p> <p>Figure 25 – Accessible Urinal</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks												
	Manuals	Page/Table														
1200mm	Design Manual Barrier Free Access 2008	Division 13 ---SIGNS	<p>68. Braille and Tactile Sign</p> <p>(1)&(2) Braille and tactile sign shall be installed on adjacent wall or door of public toilet to indicate whether the toilet is for male, female or unisex. The sign shall be placed at 900 mm to 1500 mm above the finished floor level. Specification of Braille cells is shown in Figure 31.</p> <p>(3) If there is no door, the sign shall be provided on the wall in front of the toilets.</p> <p>(4)&(5) A Braille and tactile fire exit map as shown in Figure 32 shall be provided directly above the call button of the accessible lift in the lobby of the accessible lift in a building if a fire exit map for the use of the public is provided. The map shall be placed at 800 mm to 1200 mm above the finished floor leve</p>													
		Division 13 ---SIGNS	 <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Dot Spacing :</td> <td>2.5 mm</td> <td>Character Spacing :</td> <td>6.5 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Dot Height :</td> <td>0.5 mm</td> <td>Line Spacing :</td> <td>10.0 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Dot base diameter :</td> <td>1.5 mm</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </table> <p>Figure 31 – Specification of Braille Cells</p>	Dot Spacing :	2.5 mm	Character Spacing :	6.5 mm	Dot Height :	0.5 mm	Line Spacing :	10.0 mm	Dot base diameter :	1.5 mm			
		Dot Spacing :	2.5 mm	Character Spacing :	6.5 mm											
Dot Height :	0.5 mm	Line Spacing :	10.0 mm													
Dot base diameter :	1.5 mm															
Division 19 ---LIFTS	<p>78. Special Requirements for Accessible Lifts</p> <p>(1) Every floor of a building shall be accessible by at least one passenger lift which shall fully comply with all the obligatory design requirements as stipulated in this section and have direct access to main lift lobby. All other passenger lifts in the building must comply with paragraphs 79 & 80.</p> <p>A lift shall have minimum internal car dimensions of 1200 mm x 1100 mm wide, with a minimum clear entrance width of 850 mm, and shall have handrails extending to within 150 mm of the corners at the rear and sides of the car. The top of the gripping surface of the handrails shall be at a height of 850 mm – 950 mm, with a space of 30 mm - 50 mm between the handrails and wall. (see Figure 40)</p> <p>(2) Where there are more than three lifts in a building, access shall be provided to every floor by at least one lift having minimum internal car dimensions of 1500 mm x 1400 mm (either wide or deep) with a minimum clear entrance width of 850 mm.</p>															

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
1200mm	Design Manual Barrier Free Access 2008	Division 19 ---LIFTS	<p>80. Lift Control Buttons</p> <p>(1) Essential lift control buttons including floor numbering buttons, emergency alarm push button and door opening push button in the lift car shall not be less than 900 mm and not more than 1200 mm above the floor of the car.</p> <p>(2) Lift call buttons at the lift halls shall not be less than 900 mm and not more than 1200 mm above the floor of the finished floor level of the lift hall.</p> <p>(3) Provision of secondary control panel for over-spilled floor numbering buttons is always acceptable.</p> <p>(4) All lift control buttons shall have a minimum dimension of 20 mm (see Figure 41).</p> <p>(5) Braille and tactile markings shall be placed either on or to the left of the control buttons.</p> <p>(6) Such Braille and tactile markings shall be in Arabic numerals and/or symbols. Tactile markings shall have a minimum dimension of 15 mm high and be raised 1 mm minimum.</p> <p>(7) The tactile marking of the push buttons for the main entrance floor shall be identified with a symbol in a star shape (see Figure 41).</p> <p>(8) The emergency alarm push button shall be in a tactile bell shape (see Figure 41).</p> <p>(e) The use of visually and acoustically reflective wall surfaces can cause discomfort for persons with visual and hearing impairment.</p> <p>(f) For lifts of the size that does not allow a wheelchair user to turn around within the lift car, mirror should be installed with the bottom edge to be set at 900 mm above the floor level in the lift car to facilitate a wheelchair user in reversing and to see which level the lift has reached.</p> <p>(g) Where planning allows, lift cars may be provided with opposing doors to allow a wheelchair user to leave without having to reverse.</p>	
	Design Manual Barrier Free Access 2008	B. Recommended Design Requirements	<p>Keypad design</p> <p>(c) In cases where difficulties are encountered to fully comply with the obligatory requirements of installation of lift control buttons in high-rise buildings, keypad control device in conjunction with a conventional lift control panels in lifts for persons with a disability should be provided. Proposed standardized positions of buttons for keypad control device are shown in Figure 42 for reference.</p> <p>The keypad should:</p> <p>(i) have control buttons of minimum dimension of 20 mm;</p> <p>(ii) have Braille and tactile markings following the standard as stipulated in paragraphs 80(6) and 80(8);</p> <p>(iii) be installed between 900mm to 1200mm from finished floor level of the lift car;</p> <p>(iv) have adequate luminous contrast between the tactile markings on the buttons and the background;</p> <p>(v) have voice announcement and visual indication of the floors registered; and</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
1200mm	Design Manual Barrier Free Access 2008	B. Recommended Design Requirements	<p>81. Indication and Notification for Accessible Lifts An illuminated visual indicator and an audible signal shall be provided at the lift entrance to indicate the arrival of the lift car and its direction of travel. The audible signal shall sound once for UP direction and twice for DOWN direction, and shall be activated before the arrival of the lift. The audible signal can be broadcasted from a device in the lift car as an alternative provided it can be heard from the lift lobby.</p> <p>Tactile and Braille floor designations shall be provided on the jambs on both sides of each lift entrance, by means of Arabic numerals, minimum 60 mm high, raised 1 mm, and at 1200 mm above the finished floor level.</p>	
		CHAPTER 5 BUILDING SERVICES DESIGN REQUIREMENTS	<p>Recommended Design Requirements Positioning (a) Except as otherwise provided in Division 19 for lifts, the controls for the operation of building services or safety devices including electrical switches, light switches, thermostats, intercom switches and card reading machines which are intended to be accessible to wheelchair users should be located between 450 mm and 1200 mm above the finished floor level (see Figure 43).</p>	
CHAPTER 5 BUILDING SERVICES DESIGN REQUIREMENTS		<p>Telephone for Persons with Ambulant Disabilities and Wheelchair Users b) At least one in a group of two or more payphones should be designed for access by persons with a disability and in compliance with the following: i) the approach to the accessible payphone should be free of obstacles; ii) the accessible payphone should not be placed on a stepped base unless a ramp in compliance with Division 5 is provided; iii) the cord length of the accessible payphone should not be less than 750 mm; iv) to facilitate wheelchair users, all operable parts including the coin slot of the accessible payphone should not be positioned higher than 1200 mm above the finished floor level; v) if there is an enclosure for the accessible payphone, the enclosure should begin no more than 650 mm from the finished floor level to prevent it from being a hazard to persons with visual impairment; vi) there should be a clear floor space of at least 750 mm by 1200 mm in front of the accessible payphone to allow either a forward or parallel approach by a wheelchair user;</p>		
1200mm				

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
	Design Manual Barrier Free Access 2008	CHAPTER 5 BUILDING SERVICES DESIGN REQUIREMENTS	<p>(vii) if a parallel approach is adopted, the enclosure sides, if there is an enclosure, should not extend more than 250 mm in front of the face of the accessible payphone;</p> <p>(viii) If a forward approach is adopted, the enclosure, if any, should have a clear width of at least 800 mm to provide wheelchair access; shelves or other obstructions should not extend more than 400 mm from the face of the accessible payphone; and there should be a space of 750 mm wide by 650 mm high by 430 mm deep for the footplate of a wheelchair;</p> <p>(ix) if the accessible payphone is provided in an enclosed booth, the door of the booth should open outwards and have a clear width of not less than 800 mm between the open door and the opposite jamb or the other leaf; and</p> <p>(x)if the accessible payphones are provided in a booth without door, the entrance to the booth should not be less than 800 mm wide.</p> <p>5.6 DRINKING FOUNTAINS Spatial Arrangement (e) The spatial arrangement should allow for the provision of: (i) a clear floor space of at least 750 mm x 1200 mm; (ii) a clear knee space of at least 750 mm wide, 200 mm deep and 680 mm high between the bottom of the apron and the floor or ground; and (iii) a toe space not less than 750 mm wide, 230 mm deep and 230 mm high.</p>	
1200mm	Design Manual Barrier Free Access 2008	APPENDIX A ANTHROPOMETRICS	<p>A.3 Forward reach of a wheelchair user The maximum forward reach, without obstruction, is 1200 mm from the floor and the minimum forward reach is 400 mm from the floor as shown in Figures A5 and A7. The maximum forward reach over an obstruction 500 mm deep is 1100 mm from the floor as shown in Figure A6.</p> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; align-items: center;">   </div> <p style="text-align: center;">Figure A5 - Forward Reach</p> <p style="text-align: center;">Figure A7 - Forward Reach Without Obstruction</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
	Design Manual Barrier Free Access 2008	APPENDIX A ANTHROPOMETRICS	<p>A.4 Side reach The maximum side reach, without obstruction, is 1300 mm from the floor and the minimum side reach is 250 mm from the floor as shown in Figures A8 and A9. The maximum side reach over an obstruction 860 mm high by 500 mm deep is 1200 mm from the floor as shown in Figure A10. Figure A8 - Side Reach Without Obstruction Figure A9</p>   <p>Figure A8 - Side Reach Without Obstruction Figure A9 – Maximum Side Reach</p>	
1200mm	APSEC Discussion Forum on 16 March 2012	<p>Under current APP-68 (previously known as PNAP-173), the tructural design of cantilevered structure with span more than 1000mm should use a beam-and-slab type of arrangement instead of pure slab cantilever. Recently, most of the new residential buildings in Hong Kong have balconies with a cantilever span of 1200mm to 1500mm. For aesthetic reason, most architects would like to have a thicker pure cantilever slab for the balcony, instead of having the edge eams. Also, when the width of the balcony is only half way across the living room, the anchorage detail for the cantilever beam is much more difficult to construct</p>	<p>BD clarified that PNAP APP-68 for cantilevered structures to adopt a beam-slab construction if the span exceeding 1000mm is advisory. BD would consider RSE's proposal case by case with due consideration of global stability and safety, i.e. reduced working stress of rebars, detailing of rebars arrangement, etc. HKIE's suggestion on limit the working stress of rebars, concrete cover etc. are already given in the PNAP.</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
1200mm	APSEC Discussion Forum on 16 March 2012	. We understand that the APP-68 advised to increase the slab thickness inside the flat in order to have a straight re-bar; however, the slab would need to be at least 300mm thick which will increase the concrete volume a lot & reduce the clear headroom of the ormal residential unit. We would like BD to allow and consider using pure cantilever slab construction for span up to 1500mm. The minimum cover and slab thickness can be increased, and the design service stress at re-bar will still be limited to certain value.		
1200mm	3/2015 APSEC Discussion Forum on 29 May 2015	Requirement on Height of Essential Lift Control Buttons (Item raised by HKIA) Under BFA 2008, paragraph 78 Special Requirements for Accessible Lifts: 2nd paragraph in Sub-paragraph (1) says, "All other passenger lifts in the building must comply with aragraphs 79 & 80." In paragraph 80 Lift Control Buttons, Sub-paragraph (1) says, " Essential lift control buttons including floor umbering buttons... shall not be less than 900mm and not more than 1200mm above the floor... "	The BD explained that the reason for the height requirement of essential lift control buttons to apply also to non-accessible passenger lifts was to cater for the visually impaired and wheelchair users when the accessible lifts were not available for use during maintenance or repair works.	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
1200mm	3/2015 APSEC Discussion Forum on 29 May 2015	<p>It seems that the height requirement of essential lift control buttons would apply to ALL passenger lifts irrespective of them being accessible lifts or not. Noting that EMSD recommends "Children must be accompanied by adults when using lifts" (http://www.emsd.gov.hk/emsd/eng/pps/le_pub_su.shtml#05), would the BD please illuminate on the rationale for such seeming over-provision/restriction for non-accessible passenger lifts?</p>		
1200mm	3 /2017 APSEC Discussion Forum on 19 May 2017	<p>Pipe Ducts and Pipe Wells In order to obviate access difficulties and facilitate future maintenance of common drains, PNAP APP-93 stipulates the criteria that pipe ducts and pipe wells need to fulfill. For instance, size of pipe well shall not be less than 1200mm x 1500mm, and an unobstructed working space of not less than 700mm shall be provided in front of pipes in pipe duct, etc. However, at times, these minimum criteria are regarded as the maximum allowable by some case officers for GFA exemption, and this unnecessarily restricts the design flexibility in architectural layout.</p>	<p>BD had the same understanding. Favourable consideration would be given to designs indicating sizes of services and minimum provisions necessary for housing and repairing such in the pipe ducts and wells. Furthermore, designs should not attract convenient conversion of such spaces, whether in front of or inside the ducts and wells, into other uses.</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
1200mm	3 /2017 APSEC Discussion Forum on 19 May 2017	We believe such onerous approach is certainly not the genuine intent of the PNAP, and that pipe wells with sizes exceeding the minimum requirement could also be considered acceptable for GFA exemption providing that reasonable justifications, e.g. pipe layouts to demonstrate the necessity, are provided. Would the BD please confirm that our understanding is correct.		

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
1350mm	Code of Practice for Fire Safety in Buildings 2011		<p>Clause D22.3</p> <p>Subject to Clause D22.2 above, every EVA should comply with the following requirements according to the Use Classification of the building it serves:</p> <p>(a) for Use Classification 6, EVA should be provided to serve two opposite facades that are remote from each other and each having a length of not less than one-fourth of the total length of all perimeter walls of the building. If access to the site from more than one street is available, the EVA serving the two facades should gain access from different street. The EVA should be in the form of a two-way carriageway and the width of the carriageway should be not less than 13.5m if there is no central divider. If there is a central divider, the width of each carriageway should not be less than 7.3m. If any such EVA is outside the site, a reserve area of not less than 6m wide measured from the building boundary alongside that EVA should be provided as an additional EVA (see illustration in Diagram D6);</p> <p>(b) for Use Classification 5a, the EVA should comply with the requirements of thoroughfares stipulated in Subsection B20;</p> <p>(c) for a building with mixed Use Classifications, the EVA should comply with the most stringent requirements for any particular Use Classification in this Clause.</p>	
1500mm	Building (Planning) Regulations (Cap. 123 sub. leg. F)	2. Interpretation	<p>open air (露天地方) means a space which—</p> <p>(a) is vertically uncovered and unobstructed;</p> <p>(b) is not less, in any horizontal dimension, than 1.5 m ;</p> <p>and</p> <p>(c) where such space is enclosed on 4 sides, has a horizontal area of not less than 1 m² for every 6 m of the mean height of the walls enclosing the space; (G.N.A. 83 of 1959; L.N. 294 of 1976)</p>	
		Part II Projections	<p>(4) A retractable awning that projects over a street—</p> <p>(a) must not project over the street more than 500 mm (when retracted) or more than 2.5 m (when fully extended);</p> <p>(b) must not project at a height of less than 2.5 m above the ground level;</p> <p>(c) if it projects over a street that has a carriage-way—must have a horizontal clearance of not less than 600 mm from the pavement kerb line; and (d) if it projects over a street that consists only of a footpath—must have a horizontal clearance of not less than 1.5 m from the centre line of the footpath</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
1500mm	Building (Planning) Regulations (Cap. 123 sub. leg. F)	25. Space about domestic buildings	<p>1) (a) Every domestic building on a class A or B site or on a class C site shall have within the site an open space at the rear, or partly at the rear and partly at the side, at a level of not less than 150 mm below the floor of the lowermost storey in accordance with the Second Schedule: Provided that where the Building Authority considers it necessary for proper and equitable development or redevelopment of an adjacent site, he may require the provision of more open space than that specified in the Second Schedule. (G.N.A. 97 of 1962; L.N. 82 of 1963) (b) The open space provided pursuant to subparagraph (a) shall be such that no part of the building which bounds on such open space at any level shall be within 1.5 m, measured horizontally, of a line drawn vertically from a point in the boundary of the open space immediately opposite thereto. (L.N. 33 of 1966)</p> <p>(2) No part of any domestic building shall be erected within 1.5 m of the rear boundary of the site. The open space so provided shall be counted as part of the open space required under this regulation. (L.N. 33 of 1966)</p> <p>(3) No existing domestic building which has an open space of equal or less area than that required by this regulation shall be altered in such manner as to reduce the existing amount of open space.</p> <p>(4) No existing domestic building which has a greater area of open space than that required by this regulation shall be altered in such a manner as to reduce the area of open space to less than that required by this regulation.</p> <p>(5) Where any open space or area is at a level more than 600 mm below an adjoining open space, safe parapet walls, railings or fences shall be provided by the person creating the difference in levels.</p> <p>(6) Access shall be provided to every open space.</p>	
1500mm		28. Service lanes	<p>(1) In addition to any open space required under regulation 25 every domestic building shall be provided with a service lane at the rear or side of such building : Provided that a service lane shall not be required— (a) where a public lane not less than 3 m wide or a street already exists; (b) for detached and semi-detached buildings; (c) where exempted by the Building Authority.</p> <p>(2) Every such service lane shall be accessible from an existing street but where such access is not immediately possible, this regulation shall be deemed to have been complied with if access would be obtained in the event of future development or redevelopment of other lots within the block. (L.N. 159 of 1990)</p> <p>(3) The alignment, width and levels of every such lane shall be decided by the Building Authority who may grant a modification of regulation 25 when a lane exceeding 1.5 m in width is required.</p>	

DATA	Related Regulations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
1500mm	Building (Planning) Regulations (Cap. 123 sub. leg. F)	31. Minimum requirements of window	<p>(1) <i>No prescribed window</i> shall, for the purposes of regulation 30, be deemed to face into the external air unless—</p> <p>(a) <i>it faces into a street which is not less than 4.5 m wide</i>; or</p> <p>(b) <i>it faces into a space uncovered and unobstructed above the area delineated by the rectangular horizontal plane</i>; and</p> <p>(c) <i>it is so placed that, if another rectangular plane, the base whereof is equal to and common with the base of the rectangular horizontal plane, is inclined, above the rectangular horizontal plane, at an angle of 71 1/2° from the horizontal where the window is in a room used for habitation or 76° from the horizontal where the window is in a room used for the purposes of an office or as a kitchen, no part of the building, or of any other building within the site on which such building is erected, protrudes above such plane</i>; or (G.N.A. 97 of 1962)</p>	
1500mm	Building (Planning) Regulations (Cap. 123 sub. leg. F)		<p>(d) <i>where such window opens on to an area bounded on the side opposite the window by a boundary of the site on which the building is erected</i>, such window is so placed that, if the rectangular horizontal plane is projected to such boundary and, from the position at which it first intersects the boundary, another rectangular plane, the base whereof is parallel and level with the sill of <i>the window and has a length equal to the length of the base of the rectangular horizontal plane, is projected, towards the site and above the rectangular horizontal plane, at an angle of 80 1/2° from the horizontal where the window is in a room used for habitation or 83° where the window is in a room used for the purposes of an office or as a kitchen, no part of the building, or of any other building within such site, protrudes above such inclined plane</i>: (G.N.A. 97 of 1962)<i>Provided that, where there is a service lane or street less than 4.5 m wide adjacent to and parallel with such boundary, the boundary shall, for the purposes of this subparagraph be deemed to be at a position 1.5 m beyond such boundary.</i> (L.N. 54 of 1969)</p>	
1500mm	Building (Planning) Regulations (Cap. 123 sub. leg. F)		<p>(2) The rectangular horizontal plane shall be such that—</p> <p>(a) <i>it has an area of not less than 21 m²</i>; and</p> <p>(b) <i>the minimum length of the base is not less than 2.3 m</i>; and</p> <p>(c) <i>the minimum length of the sides at right angles to the base, between the wall in which the window is sited and any other wall or building opposite thereto within the boundary of the site on which the building is erected, is not less than 4.5 m</i>; or</p> <p>(d) <i>where the window opens on to an area bounded on the side opposite to the window by a boundary of the site on which the building is erected, the minimum length of the sides at right angles to the base, between the wall in which the window is sited and such boundary, is not less than 2.3 m</i>; or</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
			<p>(e) where the window opens on to an area bounded on the side opposite to the window by a boundary of the site on which the building is erected and there is a service lane or street less than 4.5 m wide adjacent to and parallel with such boundary, the minimum length of the sides at the site and above the rectangular horizontal plane, at an angle of 80 1/2° from the horizontal where the window is in a room used for habitation or 83° where the window is in a room used for the purposes of an office or as a kitchen, no part of the building, or of any other building within such site, protrudes above such inclined plane: (G.N.A. 97 of 1962) Provided that, where there is a service lane or street less than 4.5 m wide adjacent to and parallel with such boundary, the boundary shall, for the purposes of this subparagraph be deemed to be at a position 1.5 m beyond such boundary. (L.N. 54 of 1969)</p>	
1500mm	<p>Building (Planning) Regulations (Cap. 123 sub. leg. F)</p>	<p>Part VI Domestic Buildings</p>	<p>46. Tenement house</p> <p>(1) No tenement house shall be erected with a depth from the front main wall or, if any balcony is projected from the front main wall, from the front of every such balcony to the nearest rear main wall exceeding 10 m unless exempted by the Building Authority. (L.N. 33 of 1966)</p> <p>(2) (a) Save where exempted by the Building Authority, every storey of every tenement house shall be provided with a window in such rear main wall of such storey.</p> <p>(b) Such window shall be so constructed that— (i) the aggregate superficial area of the glass in the window is at least 1.5 m²; (ii) the window can, to an extent of at least 1.5 m², be opened into the open air in such a manner that the top of the opening is at least 2 m above the level of the floor. (G.N.A. 83 of 1959)</p> <p>(3) No windows required under these regulations in any tenement house shall be obstructed by the erection of any structure either inside or outside the building.</p> <p>(4) (a) The internal area of every kitchen in a tenement house shall be—</p> <p>(i) not less than 3.75 m² where the total area of the domestic premises of which such kitchen forms part, does not exceed 45 m²;</p> <p>(ii) not less than 4.5 m² where the total area of the domestic premises of which such kitchen forms part, exceeds 45 m² but does not exceed 70 m²;</p> <p>(iii) not less than 5.5 m² where the total area of the domestic premises of which such kitchen forms part, exceeds 70 m².</p> <p>(b) In no case shall the smaller dimension of such kitchen be less than 1.5 m.</p> <p>(5) For the purpose of these regulations a tenement house means any building in the domestic part of which any living room is intended or adapted for the use of more than one tenant or sub-tenant. In this regulation living room (起居室) means any room intended or adapted as a place for cooking or sleeping. (L.N. 294 of 1976)</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
		47. Building abutting on retaining wall	<p>(1) No domestic building shall be erected against a retaining wall which exceeds 4.5 m in height. (L.N. 294 of 1976)</p> <p>(2) A space not less than 1.5 m in width shall be left between any domestic building and the bottom of any retaining wall exceeding 4.5 m in height. (L.N. 294 of 1976) (3)</p> <p>For the purposes of this regulation a massive rock face shall be deemed to be a retaining wall.</p>	
1500mm	Building (Planning) Regulations (Cap. 123 sub. leg. F)	22. Permitted site coverage and plot ratio may be exceeded in certain cases	<p>(2) Where part of a lot, being a part that abuts on a street, is acquired by the Government, either by agreement or by resumption under the Lands Resumption Ordinance (Cap. 124), for the purpose of street widening, the Building Authority may permit— (a) the site coverage for a building erected on that lot, being a class A, B or C site, or for any one part of the building to exceed the permitted percentage site coverage, so, however, that the site coverage therefor does not exceed that percentage of the area of the site equal to the sum of the permitted percentage site coverage for the building or for that part of the building, as the case may be, and the figure obtained by dividing the product of 1500 and the area of the part of the lot so acquired by the Government by the product of the area of the site and the height of the building; and (L.N. 294 of 1976) (b) the permitted plot ratio for the building or, if the building is a composite building, for the domestic part of the building to exceed the permitted plot ratio, so, however, that the plot ratio therefor is not greater than the permitted plot ratio for the building or for that part of the building, as the case may be, by more than 20 per centum or does not exceed the sum of the permitted plot ratio for the building or for that part of the building, as the case may be, and the figure obtained by dividing the product of 5 and the area of the part of the lot so acquired by the Government by the area of the site on which the building is erected, whichever is the less. (29 of 1998 s. 27)</p>	
	Building (Refuse Storage and Material Recovery Chambers and Refuse Chutes) Regulations (Cap. 123 sub. leg. H)	5. Access to refuse storage and material recovery chambers for emptying refuse containers and recovered materials	<p>(1) Every refuse storage and material recovery chamber shall be of a design approved by the Building Authority and in such location approved by the Building Authority as to provide ready access thereto for the purpose of removing any refuse container and recovered materials stored in such refuse storage and material recovery chamber.</p> <p>(2) Where access to any refuse storage and material recovery chamber other than a refuse storage and material recovery chamber with vehicular access is obtained along a passage or alley or similar way, the passage, alley or other way shall be not less than 1.5 m in width, shall be without steps and paved and shall have a longitudinal gradient not greater than 1 in 20.</p>	
		8. Minimum dimensions of refuse storage and material recovery chambers	<p>(1) No refuse storage and material recovery chamber shall have any dimension less than 1.5 m.</p> <p>(2) The height, measured to the ceiling, of every refuse storage and material recovery chamber shall, throughout the chamber, be not less than 2 m.</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
1500mm	Building (Construction) Regulations (Cap. 123 sub. leg. B)	14. Chunam	<p>(1) Chunam shall—</p> <p>(a) be composed of cement, hydrated lime, non-organic soil and water to form a durable and impermeable material;</p> <p>(b) be applied in 2 layers, each about 20 mm thick, with a well-keyed surface to the bottom layer and with lapped daywork joints; and</p> <p>(c) where the surface gradient exceeds 1 in 2, be adequately restrained from slipping.</p> <p>(2) A weep hole, with an internal diameter of not less than 50 mm, shall be provided to every 1.5 m² of the face of chunamed surface and in areas of localized seepage.</p>	
		PART III LOADS	<p>15. Resistance to sliding, uplift and overturning</p> <p>(1) Except where otherwise provided in these regulations, a building, street, building works or street works shall be so designed and constructed that—</p> <p>(a) the resistance to the sliding force acting thereon shall be not less than 1.5 times the sliding force due to any loads;</p> <p>(b) the resistance to the uplift force acting thereon shall be not less than 1.5 times the uplift force due to any loads; and</p> <p>(c) the resistance to the overturning moment acting thereon shall be not less than 1.5 times the overturning moment due to wind loads and 2 times the overturning moment due to loads other than wind loads .</p> <p>(2) The resistance to the uplift force shall be calculated as the sum of the downward force due to the minimum dead loads plus that due to any permitted anchoring resistance.</p> <p>(3) The resistance to the overturning moment shall be calculated as the sum of the stabilizing moment due to the minimum dead loads plus that due to any permitted anchoring resistance.</p>	
	Building (Construction) Regulation (Cap. 123 sub. leg. Q)	9. Imposed loads—design of protective barrier	<p>(1) A protective barrier installed to restrict or control the movement of persons must be designed to resist the minimum horizontal imposed loads specified in Table 3 in the Schedule when separately applied (relevant imposed load).</p> <p>(2) If the wind load is applicable, the protective barrier must be designed to resist the relevant imposed load or the wind load, whichever produces the greater adverse effect.</p> <p>(3) A vehicle barrier for a carriageway, floor, driveway or ramp used by vehicles must be designed to withstand the greatest impact force anticipated, subject to the following requirements—</p> <p>(a) the minimum design impact force on a vehicle barrier is to be $[0.5 Mv^2 / (\delta c + \delta b)]$ kN where— M is the gross mass in kg of the heaviest vehicle that would be allowed to use the carriageway, floor, driveway or ramp; v is the velocity of the vehicle normal to the barrier in metre per second; δc is the deformation of the vehicle in mm; and δb is the deflection of the barrier in mm; and</p> <p>(b) the impact force is to be uniformly distributed over any length of 1.5 m and acting horizontally at the bumper height of the vehicle.</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
	Building (Construction) Regulation (Cap. 123 sub. leg. Q)	22. Interpretation—sections 22, 23 and 24	<p>In this section and sections 23 and 24— minor retaining wall (小型擋土牆) means a retaining wall that meets the following descriptions— (a) the difference between the upper ground level, and the lower ground level, next to the wall does not exceed 1.5 m; (b) the average inclination of the ground on the upper ground level next to the wall does not exceed 15 degrees to the horizontal; and (c) the surcharges from the foundation or any other structures do not impose any loading on the wall; retaining wall (擋土牆) means a permanent structure on land that retains earth or fill.</p>	
1500mm	Code of Practice for Fire Safety in Buildings 2011	Clause B18.4	<p>At each refuge floor, notices and signs should be provided in the following manner: (a) A sign indicating the required staircase number and a sign indicating the entrance to the refuge floor should be displayed inside each required staircase at a position immediately before entering the refuge floor at a height of 1500mm above the landing or the step immediately below the required staircase; (b) A notice in rectangular shape and in the following form should be displayed at a position immediately after entering the refuge floor from each required staircase at a height of 1500mm above the floor level;</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p style="text-align: center;">REFUGE FLOOR 庇護層 For Temporary Rest During Emergency Escape 緊急逃生時供暫時歇息用</p> <hr style="width: 50%; margin: 0 auto;"/> <p style="text-align: center;">EXITS TO STREET LEVEL</p> <p style="text-align: center;">← 往街道出口 →</p> <p style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around;"> staircase (no.) ()號樓梯 staircase (no.) ()號樓梯 </p> </div> <p>(c) Sufficient directional signs in the following form should be displayed at appropriate positions at the refuge floor at a height of 1500mm above the floor level, to indicate the direction of travel in order to enter the respective required staircase;</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px; margin: 10px 0;"> <p style="text-align: center;">→</p> <p style="text-align: center;">STAIRCASE (No.) ()號樓梯</p> </div>	

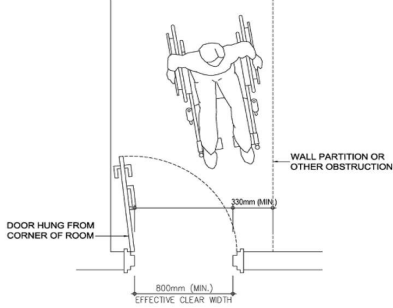
DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
1500mm	Building (Construction) Regulations (Cap. 123 sub. leg. B)	Clause B18.4	(d) All signs and notices provided under (a), (b) and (c) should: - (i) be in English and Chinese; (ii) be illuminated by a light on two systems as the lighting referred to in Clause B5.5; (iii) have words and characters in block letters not less than 50mm high in white colour on a background in green or the words and characters in green on a background in white or black; and (iv) not be easily defaced or damaged; (e) Appropriate notices in English and Chinese in words and characters not less than 25mm high should be provided in a conspicuous part at the main entrance of the building to indicate where the refuge floors are situated.	
		Subsection D7 - Access to a Fireman's Lift at Ground Storey Clause D7.3	The passage from the fire service access point to the fireman's lift should – (a) have a clear width of not less than 1500mm and a clear headroom of not less than 2000mm ; and (b) be separated from the remainder of the ground storey by walls having an FRR of not less than that required for the elements of construction in the ground storey. Any opening in these walls for communication with ground storey should be through a protected lobby complying with Clauses C9.3 and C16.5.	
	Building (Construction) Regulations (Cap. 123 sub. leg. B)	Section 5 – Firefighting and Rescue Stairway Subsection D14 - Access to a Firefighting and Rescue Stairway at Ground Storey	Clause D14.4 The passage from the fire service access point to the firefighting and rescue stairway should have a clear width of not less than 1500mm and a clear headroom of not less than 2000mm.	
	Design Manual Barrier Free Access 2008	DESIGN REQUIREMENTS Division 1 --- AUDITORIUM AND RELATED FACILITIES	4. Wheelchair Spaces A minimum of four wheelchair spaces shall be provided at spectator level in the auditorium with not more than 800 fixed seats. For auditorium with more than 800 fixed seats at spectator level, two wheelchair spaces shall be provided for every 400 fixed seats and any part thereof. (For example, at least six wheelchair spaces shall be provided if there are 900 fixed seats.) The spaces shall be grouped in pairs (not less than two) and also not separated from the seats for other audiences. Each wheelchair space shall have unobstructed line of vision to the stage areas at which the relevant activity takes place, and be of minimum size of 800 mm x 1300 mm, with the side of 800 mm facing towards the stage podium or screen. The minimum width of the passage leading to a wheelchair space from an accessible entrance of the auditorium shall not be less than 1500 mm. (see Figure 1A) Readily removable seats can be installed in wheelchair spaces when the spaces are not occupied by wheelchair users.	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
1500mm	Design Manual Barrier Free Access 2008	DESIGN REQUIREMENTS Division 1 --- AUDITORIUM AND RELATED FACILITIES		
		Division 2 --- HOTELS, HOSTELS AND GUESTHOUSES		
	Design Manual Barrier Free Access 2008	Division 3 --- CARPARKS	<p>10. Marking Requirements for Accessible Parking Spaces The parking space shall be clearly marked with the international symbol of accessibility and the parking space number on the floor as shown in Figure 3.</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks							
	Manuals	Page/Table									
1500mm	Design Manual Barrier Free Access 2008	Division 3 --- CARPARKS									
		Division 4 --- ACCESS ROUTE	B. Recommended Design Requirements Width (a) The clear width of the access route should not be less than 1500 mm . Floor Space (b) In large floor space of more than 200m ² where the cues of physical edges such as walls and handrails are not present, tactile guide paths should be used to facilitate orientation of persons with visual impairment.								
		Division 5 --- RAMPS	Obligatory Design Requirements 15.Width A ramp shall not be less than 1050 mm in width. 16.Landing A clear space of not less than 1500 mm x 1500 mm shall be provided at the head and foot of every ramp , i.e. door swing and alike shall not be allowed to swing onto the landing. 17. Running Slope and Length No ramp shall be steeper than 1 in 12 gradient except in the following situations of minor rise : <table border="1" style="margin-left: 40px;"> <thead> <tr> <th>Maximum slope</th> <th>Maximum length</th> <th>Maximum rise</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1:10 i.e., 10%</td> <td>1500mm</td> <td>150mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1:8 i.e., 12.5%</td> <td>600mm</td> <td>75mm</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Maximum slope	Maximum length	Maximum rise	1:10 i.e., 10%	1500mm	150mm	1:8 i.e., 12.5%	600mm
Maximum slope	Maximum length	Maximum rise									
1:10 i.e., 10%	1500mm	150mm									
1:8 i.e., 12.5%	600mm	75mm									
	18. Requirements for Ramps Combination of ramps of minor rise as stated in paragraph 17 shall not be permitted. (1) If the gradient of a ramp is 1 in 20 or steeper, the ramp shall be provided with : (a) a landing of not less than 1200 mm long for each 10 m length of horizontal run or part thereof; (see Figure 7) (b) handrails complying with Division 8 on both sides; and (c) tactile warning strips at the head, foot and landings (see Figure 7). (2) The above items shall not apply to ramp access to lift or ramp with a length less than 300 mm.										
	19. Protection and Surface (1) Any ramp with a rise greater than 200 mm, leading down towards an area where there may be vehicular traffic, shall have a railing or barrier across the full width of its lower end, and be not less than 1500 mm from the foot of the ramp .										

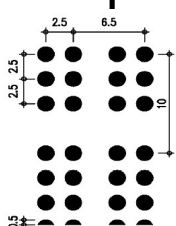
DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks													
	Manuals	Page/Table															
1500mm	Design Manual Barrier Free Access 2008	Division 5 --- RAMPS	<p>Figure 7 - Tactile Warning Strips and Landings for Ramps</p>														
		BEST PRACTICE SECTION	<p>Figure 8 - Running Slope and Length</p> <p>B. Recommended Design Requirements</p> <p>(a) A ramp should have a running slope 1:12 (8.33%) to 1:20 (5%).</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Maximum slope</th> <th>Maximum length</th> <th>Maximum rise</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1:20 i.e., 5.00%</td> <td>10000 mm</td> <td>500 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1:16 i.e., 6.25%</td> <td>6400 mm</td> <td>400 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1:14 i.e., 7.14%</td> <td>4200 mm</td> <td>300 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1:12 i.e., 8.33%</td> <td>1800 mm</td> <td>150 mm</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>(b) Width should be at least 1200 mm to enable a wheelchair to turn or preferably at least 1500 mm to allow 2 wheelchairs to pass.</p> <p>(c) A ramp should have slip-resistant surface with a minimum "static coefficient of friction" of "Very Good" grading (see Appendix C).</p> <p>(d) Tactile warning strips at the head, foot and landing should have a minimum luminous contrast of 70% with the adjoining surfaces.</p> <p>(e) The floor and wall along a ramp should have a minimum luminous contrast of 30%.</p>	Maximum slope	Maximum length	Maximum rise	1:20 i.e., 5.00%	10000 mm	500 mm	1:16 i.e., 6.25%	6400 mm	400 mm	1:14 i.e., 7.14%	4200 mm	300 mm	1:12 i.e., 8.33%	1800 mm
Maximum slope	Maximum length	Maximum rise															
1:20 i.e., 5.00%	10000 mm	500 mm															
1:16 i.e., 6.25%	6400 mm	400 mm															
1:14 i.e., 7.14%	4200 mm	300 mm															
1:12 i.e., 8.33%	1800 mm	150 mm															

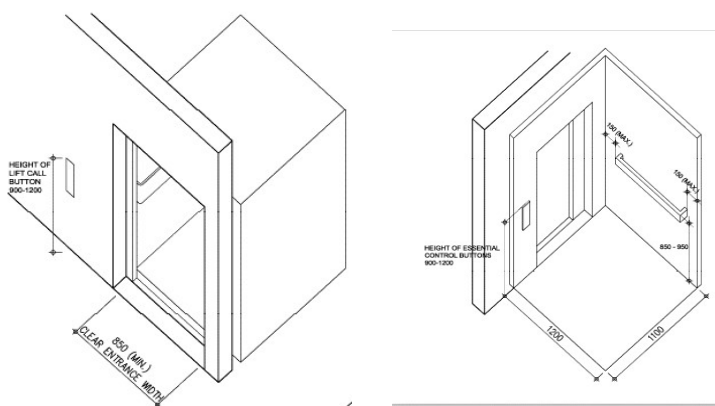
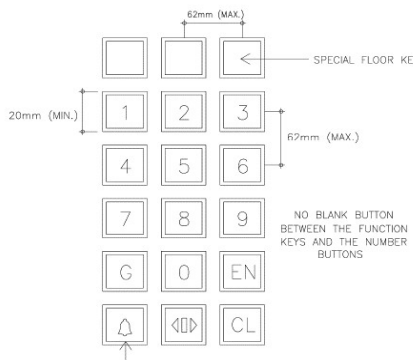
DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
1500mm	Design Manual Barrier Free Access 2008	Division 9 --- CORRIDORS, LOBBIES AND PATHS	<p>Obligatory Design Requirements</p> <p>31. Manoeuvring Space Space shall be allowed for manoeuvring wheelchairs in corridor, lobby, path and similar areas as follows: (1) area shall have a clear width of not less than 1050 mm; (2) <i>a space not less than 1500 mm x 1500 mm shall be provided within 3500 mm of every dead end</i> ; (3) any lobby in a corridor shall have a length of not less than 1200 mm, excluding space for door swings; (4) <i>a level area, extending not less than 1200 mm beyond the swings of the doors and not less than 1500 mm in width shall be provided on both sides of every entrance of a building</i> ; and (5) this paragraph shall not apply to lobby which lead to staircase only. For the purpose of this paragraph, “<i>dead end</i>” is a <i>corridor, lobby or path where the means of exit for persons with a disability is in one direction only</i> .</p> <p>BEST PRACTICE SECTION</p> <p>B. Recommended Design Requirements</p> <p>Width (a) <i>Path width should be more than 1200 mm to enable a wheelchair user to pass anyone who is on the same path or preferably at least 1500 mm to allow two wheelchairs to pass</i> . At right angle turns, inside corner should be splayed or rounded to at least 300 mm radius. (see Figure 20)</p> <p>A. A CLEAR WIDTH OF 1500mm WILL ALLOW TWO WHEELCHAIR USERS TO PASS EACH OTHER. B. DEPTH OF RECESS SHOULD NOT BE LESS THAN THE WIDTH OF THE DOOR LEAF. C. 900mm CLEAR SPACE WHERE DOORS OPEN INTO A CORRIDOR. D. A CLEAR WIDTH OF CORRIDOR SHOULD NOT BE LESS THAN 1200mm.</p> <p>*ALL DIMENSIONS ARE IN mm</p> <p>Figure 20 – Dimension and Space Allowance for Corridor in Building</p>	
1500mm	Design Manual Barrier Free Access 2008	Division 10 --- DOORS	<p>Obligatory Design Requirements</p> <p>38.Width of Doors Door, including one leaf of a pair of double doors, shall have a clear width of not less than 800 mm between the open door and opposite jamb or the other leaf. (see Figure 22)</p> <p>39.Unobstructed Area (1) The unobstructed area adjacent to the door handle on the leading face of a single door shall not be less than 330 mm in width. (see Figure 22) (2) Door, if less than 330 mm from the corner of a room, shall swing from the side nearer to that corner</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
1500mm	Design Manual Barrier Free Access 2008	Division 10 --- DOORS	 <p style="text-align: center;">*ALL DIMENSIONS ARE IN mm</p>	
			<p>40. Double-action Self-closing Doors Double-action self-closing door shall have a check mechanism to prevent the door swinging beyond the closed position and a transparent vision-panel with a bottom edge not more than 1000 mm above the floor and the top edge not less than 1500 mm above the finished floor level.</p>	
			<p>44. Frameless Glass Doors If frameless glass door is used, it shall be prominently marked so as to make it visible. The marking shall be placed across on the glass door such that at least a portion of the marking is placed between 900 mm and 1500 mm above the finished floor. The colour marking shall also be provided to glass panel adjacent to the glass door.</p>	
			<p>B. Recommended Design Requirements Vision Panels (e) Transparent vision-panel should be provided to door in between accessible path. The vision-panel should be installed with bottom edge not more than 1000 mm and top edge not less than 1500 mm above the finished floor level.</p>	

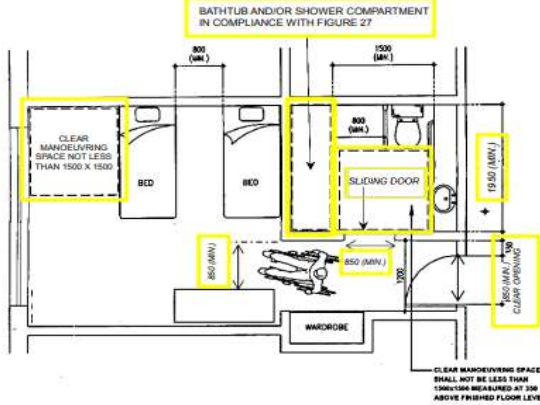
DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
1500mm	Design Manual Barrier Free Access 2008	Division 11 --- TOILETS AND W.C. CUBICLES	<p>Obligatory Design Requirements</p> <p>48. Location of Accessible W.C. Cubicle W.C. cubicles shall be accessible – (i) directly from a public corridor; and (ii) <i>where situated within a toilet containing other W.C. cubicles, through a clear space not less than 1500 mm x 1500 mm immediately in front of the compartment to allow manoeuvrability or by direct approach where no turning of the wheelchair is necessary.</i></p> <p>49. Design of Accessible W.C. Cubicle <i>The accessible W.C. cubicle shall not be less than 1500 mm x 1750 mm in area and the clear manoeuvring space within the cubicle shall not be less than 1500 mm x 1500 mm measured at 350 mm above finished floor level and the cubicle shall have in it a watercloset at a height not less than 380 mm and not more than 450 mm, measured to the top of the toilet seat.</i> Waterclosets shall be equipped with a back support such as a seat lid and seats shall not be spring-actuated.</p>	
			<p>55. Urinals If more than one urinal is provided, at least one urinal shall (i) <i>have a clear levelled space of not less than 800 mm wide x 1500 mm deep in front</i>; and (ii) be wall hung urinal with a front rim not higher than 400 mm, and have vertical grab rails of not less than 32 mm and not more than 40mm in external diameter and of 600 mm length on both sides at a height of 1200 mm above the finished floor level for use by persons with ambulant disabilities. (see Figure 25)</p>	
	Design Manual Barrier Free Access 2008	Division 11 --- TOILETS AND W.C. CUBICLES	<p style="text-align: center;">(Opposite - Handed Layout is Acceptable) Figure 24 – Accessible Toilet</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
1500mm	Design Manual Barrier Free Access 2008			
		Division 11 --- TOILETS AND W.C. CUBICLES	B. Recommended Design Requirements Unisex Facilities (a) W.C. cubicles should, where possible, be unisex and accessible from a corridor so that they can be used by either sex with assistance from members of the opposite sex, if necessary. (b) If two or more accessible unisex facilities are provided, at least one should be of opposite handed layout to the other(s). W.C. Cubicles (c) The clear distance between the watercloset and the wash basin should not be more than 600 mm for the users' convenience after toileting. The clear manoeuvring space within the cubicle shall not be less than 1500 mm x 1950 mm. (d) The angle between the two grab rails should be within the range of 80° to 90°.	
		Division 12 --- BATHROOMS AND SHOWER COMPARTMENTS	Obligatory Design Requirements 56. Bathtubs (1) There shall be a clear floor space of not less than 1500mm x 800 mm in front of the bathtub (see Figure 27) ; (2) The bathtub shall be provided with a seat of not less than 250 mm in width (see Figure 27); and (3) The bathtub shall have a maximum height of 380 mm.	
			59. Shower Heads (1) Shower heads shall: (a) be of the hand-held type; (b) be provided with a hose not less than 1500 mm in length; and (c) be provided with a wall mounting bracket to allow use in a fixed position. (2) Where shower heads are mounted on a vertical bar, the bar shall: (a) have a minimum length of 500 mm with the lower end not less than 450 mm above the finished floor level; (b) be installed so as not to obstruct the use of grab rails referred to in paragraph 57; and (c) be so mounted to be able to carry a static load of 150kg in case they are mistakenly used as a grab rail.	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks											
	Manuals	Page/Table													
1500mm	Design Manual Barrier Free Access 2008	Division 12 --- BATHROOMS AND SHOWER COMPARTMENTS	<p>60. Shower Compartments <i>Shower compartments shall have internal dimensions of not less than 1500 mm x 900 mm . The minimum clear floor space in front of the shower entrance shall be 1500 mm x 800 mm with the 1500 mm dimension parallel to the shower entrance .</i></p>												
		Division 13 --- SIGNS	<p>68. Braille and Tactile Sign (1)&(2) Braille and tactile sign shall be installed on adjacent wall or door of public toilet to indicate whether the toilet is for male, female or unisex. <i>The sign shall be placed at 900 mm to 1500 mm above the finished floor level.</i> <i>Specification of Braille cells</i> is shown in Figure 31. (3) If there is no door, the sign shall be provided on the wall in front of the toilets. (4)&(5) A Braille and tactile fire exit map as shown in Figure 32 shall be provided directly above the call button of the accessible lift in the lobby of the accessible lift in a building if a fire exit map for the use of the public is provided. The map shall be placed at 800 mm to 1200 mm above the finished floor level.</p>  <table border="1"> <tr> <td>Dot Spacing :</td> <td>2.5 mm</td> <td>Character Spacing :</td> <td>6.5 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Dot Height :</td> <td>0.5 mm</td> <td>Line Spacing :</td> <td>10.0 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Dot base diameter :</td> <td>1.5 mm</td> <td></td> <td></td> </tr> </table> <p>Figure 31 – Specification of Braille Cells</p>	Dot Spacing :	2.5 mm	Character Spacing :	6.5 mm	Dot Height :	0.5 mm	Line Spacing :	10.0 mm	Dot base diameter :	1.5 mm		
Dot Spacing :	2.5 mm	Character Spacing :	6.5 mm												
Dot Height :	0.5 mm	Line Spacing :	10.0 mm												
Dot base diameter :	1.5 mm														
	Design Manual Barrier Free Access 2008	Division 14 --- Special Obligatory Design Requirements to Assist Persons with Visual/Hearing Impairment to Various Uses of Buildings in Table 2	<p>B. Recommended Design Requirements Braille and Tactile Sign / Audible Sign (h) <i>Braille and tactile building name and address (i.e., street name with number) or a device which when activated will provide the same information in audible form should be provided on both sides of the building entrance at a height of between 900 mm and 1500 mm above the finished floor level.</i></p>												

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
1500mm	Design Manual Barrier Free Access 2008	Division 19 --- LIFTS	<p>Obligatory Design Requirements</p> <p>78. Special Requirements for Accessible Lifts (1) Every floor of a building shall be accessible by at least one passenger lift which shall fully comply with all the obligatory design requirements as stipulated in this section and have direct access to main lift lobby.</p> <p>All other passenger lifts in the building must comply with paragraphs 79 & 80.</p> <p>A lift shall have minimum internal car dimensions of 1200 mm x 1100 mm wide, with a minimum clear entrance width of 850 mm, and shall have handrails extending to within 150 mm of the corners at the rear and sides of the car. The top of the gripping surface of the handrails shall be at a height of 850 mm – 950 mm, with a space of 30 mm - 50 mm between the handrails and wall. (see Figure 40)</p> <p>(2) Where there are more than three lifts in a building, access shall be provided to every floor by at least one lift having minimum internal car dimensions of 1500 mm x 1400 mm (either wide or deep) with a minimum clear entrance width of 850 mm.</p>	
	Design Manual Barrier Free Access 2008		 <p>NOTE: WHERE THE NUMBER OF LIFTS IN A BUILDING EXCEEDS 3, AT LEAST 1 LIFT SHALL HAVE MINIMUM INTERNAL CAR DIMENSIONS OF 1500mm X 1400mm</p> <p>BEST PRACTICE SECTION</p> <p>B. Recommended Design Requirements</p> <p>Lift Control Buttons</p>  <p>NOTE: BRAILLE AND TACTILE MARKINGS AND CHINESE CHARACTERS ARE NOT SHOWN</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
1500mm	Design Manual Barrier Free Access 2008	Division 19 --- LIFTS	<p>Illumination Level (d) The level of illumination at the car controls, platform, car threshold, landing sill and lift landing shall be 150 lux minimum.</p> <p>Wheelchair Turning Space (e) An unobstructed wheelchair turning space of 1500 mm x 1500 mm should be provided in front of accessible lift car door.</p>	
	The Code of Practice on Design for Safety – External Maintenance	PART 3 - DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS2. Specific Requirements 2.1 Suspended working platform	<p>2.2 Maintenance access window 2.2.1 Access opening of a maintenance access window shall have a clearance of not less than 460 mm wide by 1100 mm high to enable the operation for M&R including material delivery. The sill of the window shall at a height of not less than 1.1 m above the internal floor finished level of the adjoining floor. One or more permanent cast-in anchors shall be provided at the external wall for anchoring of the fall arresting devices by each worker before climbing out to the external. 2.2.2 The cast-in anchors shall be located at a position which is close to the maintenance access windows and readily accessible by the worker and at a height of not less than 1.5 m and not more than 1.8 m above floor finished level of the adjoining floor. The maintenance access window when opened shall not obstruct the worker from using the cast-in anchors.</p> <p>2.6 Maintenance access ladder and gantry system 2.6.1 Maintenance access ladder and gantry system shall comply with the occupational safety requirements set out in paragraph 7 of Appendix D. 2.7 Power-operated elevating work platform 2.7.1 If an elevating work platform is proposed, the extent of the external walls to be accessed shall not exceed 1.5 m above the platform level when it is in the maximum operation height. 2.7.2 A levelled and firm designated area shall be provided in the development for parking the platform.</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
	Practice Note for Authorized Persons, Registered Structural Engineers and Registered Geotechnical Engineers	APP-41 Buildings to be Planned for Use by Persons with a Disability Regulation 72 of Building (Planning) Regulations Design Manual: Barrier Free Access 2008	<p>9. Figure 2 in Division 2 of Chapter 4*</p>  <p>*ALL DIMENSIONS ARE IN mm</p> <p>Figure 2 - Typical Guest Room Layout</p>	
		APP-93 Planning and Design of Drainage Works	<p>3. In order to obviate such access difficulties and to facilitate the future maintenance of common drains, I shall require under section 28(1) of the Buildings Ordinance that the following be complied with: -</p> <p>(a) Except drains in car-parking floors, all common underground drains for new buildings shall run in a space or land which is 'sterilized' or otherwise designated as common parts of the building;</p> <p>(b) Where internal common soil and waste stacks are proposed in domestic buildings not intended for single occupancy, such stacks shall be located in the common parts of the building. Where pipe-ducts or pipe wells are proposed to house common soil and waste stacks, they shall satisfy the following criteria respectively: -</p> <p>(i) Pipe Ducts</p> <p>(1) These pipe-ducts shall be accessible from the common parts of the building;</p> <p>(2) An unobstructed working space, of not less than 700 mm in front of the pipes, shall be provided for maintenance and repair of the pipeworks; and (3) The doors or panels providing access to the pipe-ducts shall not be less than 600 mm wide by 2000 mm high and shall comply with Part C of the Code of Practice for Fire Safety in Buildings 2011.</p>	



DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
	Practice Note for Authorized Persons, Register ed Structural Engineers and Registered Geotechnical Engineers		<p>(ii) Pipe Wells</p> <p>(1) <i>The size of pipe well shall not be less than 1200 mm x 1500 mm;</i></p> <p>(2) No opening will be allowed in a pipe well other than access points for inspection and maintenance, which shall be from the common parts of the building. Access points shall be provided to the pipe well at not more than 21 storeys apart;</p> <p>(3) Cat ladder with proper guard rings shall be installed in the full height of the pipe well for inspection and maintenance purposes;</p> <p>(4) Grating platforms shall be provided at intervals of not more than 4 storeys;</p> <p>(5) The opening at every access point shall not be less than 600 mm wide by 2000 mm high and shall comply with Part C of the Code of Practice for Fire Safety in Buildings 2011; and</p> <p>(6) A ventilation opening having a minimum net area of 1/10th of the horizontal area of the pipe well shall be provided at both the top and bottom of the pipe well;</p> <p>Subject to paragraph 4 below, the area of pipe ducts and pipe wells could be exempted from the gross floor area (GFA) calculations. Open pipe wells may also be exempted from site coverage calculations. A sample illustration of the design of a pipe well is attached at Appendix A for general reference.</p>	
		APP-110 Protective Barriers	<p>Impact Resistance of Glass for Barriers</p> <p>9. Glass to be used for barriers should comply with the impact test requirements for safety glazing materials given in recognised testing standards such as ANSI Z 97.1 "Safety performance specifications and methods of testing for safety glazing material used in buildings" or BS 6206 "Impact performance requirements for flat safety glass and safety plastics for use in buildings". <i>The type of glass for barriers should achieve impact resistance not inferior to the impact grade class A to BS 6206 when the free path (or the unhindered distance a body can travel in a direction perpendicular to the surface of the protective barrier) is greater than 1500 mm. In this connection , test certificates on the glass material to prove its impact resistance should be submitted to the Building Authority for consideration .</i></p> <p>The designer should select materials that will not break when the barrier is subjected to the normal design loads that may be applied and will not be penetrated when subjected to the appropriate impact test loads.</p>	







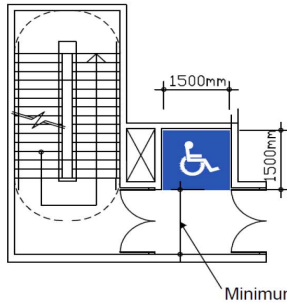
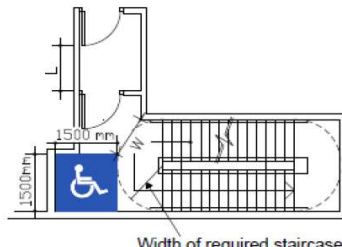
DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
	APSEC Discussion Forum on 16 March 2012	<u>Questions</u>	Under current APP-68 (previously known as PNAP-173), the structural design of cantilevered structure with span more than 1000mm should use a beam-and-slab type of arrangement instead of pure slab cantilever. Recently, most of the new residential buildings in Hong Kong have balconies with a cantilever span of 1200mm to 1500mm . For aesthetic reason, most architects would like to have a thicker pure cantilever slab for the balcony, instead of having the edge beams. Also, when the width of the balcony is only half way across the living room, the anchorage detail for the cantilever beam is much more difficult to construct. We understand that the APP-68 advised to increase the slab thickness inside the flat in order to have a straight re-bar; however, the slab would need to be at least 300mm thick which will increase the concrete volume a lot & reduce the clear headroom of the normal residential unit. We would like BD to allow and consider using pure cantilever slab construction for span up to 1500mm. The minimum cover and slab thickness can be increased, and the design service stress at re-bar will still be limited to certain value.	
		<u>BD clarified</u>	BD clarified that PNAP APP-68 for cantilevered structures to adopt a beam-slab construction if the span exceeding 1000mm is advisory. BD would consider RSE's proposal case by case with due consideration of global stability and safety, i.e. reduced working stress of rebars, detailing of rebars arrangement, etc. HKIE's suggestion on limit the working stress of rebars, concrete cover etc. are already given in the PNAP.	
	APSEC Discussion Forum on 2 August 2013	<u>Questions</u>	Design Manual – Barrier Free Access 2008 In Paragraph 49 of Division 11, for Toilets and W.C. Cubicles, the clear manoeuvring space within the cubicle shall not be less than 1500mm x1500mm measured at 350mm above finished floor level. And in Paragraph 60 of Division 12, for Bathrooms and Shower Compartments, the minimum clear floor space in front of the shower entrance shall be 1500mm x 800mm with the 1500mm dimension parallel to the shower entrance. Is it allowed to overlap the manoeuvring space and the shower compartment, if the finished floor of the shower compartment is flush with the finished floor of the manoeuvring space (please refer to Appendix II)?	
		<u>BD clarified</u>	The BD advised that whether this situation could be acceptable should be referred to the Advisory Committee on Barrier Free Access in the first place according to the established practice.	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
	<p style="text-align: center;">APSEC Discussion Forum on 10 January 2014</p>	<p>Questions</p>	<p>Code of Practice for Fire Safety in Buildings 2011 (FS Code)</p> <p>(a) Maximum Travel Distance for Use Classification 1 and 2 Under Clause B11.3(a)(i), it is stated that “In a storey which is served by two or more protected exits or points of discharge... the maximum travel distance including any deadend travel distance, is limited to... 24m from the flat/guestroom exit door to the nearest required staircase...” Together with Clause B11.2 regarding deadend travel distance for the same use classification (i.e. 24m from any point within a flat to its exit door), it is apparent that the maximum total travel distance permitted will then be 48m (24m + 24m), providing that travel in 2 different directions at a point 15m from the flat exit door is also fulfilled. However, in a recent project, the case-officer has insisted that the maximum travel distance from the farthest point in a flat to the nearest required staircase is only 24m. Please confirm that the interpretation in the former paragraph (total maximum travel distance being 48 m) is correct.</p> <p>(b) Smoke Outlets for Basement Under Clause C14.2(a), it is stated that “smoke outlets... be not more than 30m apart and situated along the street frontages or adjacent to external walls”, and under Clause C14.2(b), it is stated that “smoke outlets... be evenly distributed around the perimeter of the building...” Please clarify if the aforesaid separation requirements of not more than 30m apart for the smoke outlets apply only to the “external outlets” and do not apply to the “internal smoke intake openings” within the basement.</p> <p>(c) Fire Separation in Same Compartment and Occupancy In an institutional project, the case officer has requested that fire separation e.g. fire-rated doors/fire shutters be provided between common corridor/atrium and the adjacent same institutional uses in the same compartment (e.g. computer room, multi-purpose room, staff office, multi-media seminar/conference rooms, meeting room, etc.), as the officer opines that different usages of spaces have to be separated with fire-resistant construction. Please confirm that the requested fire separation is not necessary as the mentioned rooms and the common corridor/atrium are within the same compartment.</p> <p>(d) Discharge Width of Required Staircase In a residential project, our proposal to have different widths for the 2 required staircases of the residential tower (one being 1100mm wide and the other 1500mm) has been rejected, despite their compliance to the requirements of total discharge value and minimum individual and total width of staircases as stipulated in Clause B12.1 and B8.1. Further, we have been requested to determine the minimum width of required staircases by dividing the total discharge value by the number of staircases. Please confirm that it is allowed to provide required staircases of different widths, and that it is not necessary to determine the minimum width of required staircases in the aforementioned way.</p>	
1500mm				

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
	<p style="text-align: center;">APSEC Discussion Forum on 10 January 2014</p>	<p style="text-align: center;"><u>Questions</u></p>	<p>Clause B8.1</p> <p>Every building, except those buildings permitted under Clause B6.1 to have only one required staircase, should be so constructed that there are available from each storey not less than 2 exit routes or such greater number as may be required by Table B2. The width of each exit route and the total width of all the exit routes should be not less than the width shown in Table B2 according to the occupant capacity and the number of exit routes provided. Provided that:</p> <p>(a) this requirement should apply to only one of the storeys of a maisonette; and</p> <p>(b) where two or more exit routes (required by Table B2 to serve a storey) vary in width, any width of an exit route in such group in excess of 50% above the width of the narrowest exit route in such group should not be included in the calculation for the minimum total width of exit routes as required by column 4 of Table B2.</p> <p>Clause B12.1</p> <p>The required staircases serving the storeys of a building above the ground storey should have a total discharge value of not less than the total occupant capacity of those storeys assessed in accordance with Subsection B4.</p> <p>(a) The BD explained that the requirements of deadend travel distance and maximum travel distance for buildings in Use Classifications 1 and 2 had been stated in Clauses B11.2(a) and B 11.3(a)(i) of the FS Code 2011. For cases not involving balcony approach of the above use classifications, the total maximum travel distance from any point within a unit to the nearest required staircase achievable could be 48m.</p> <p>(b) The BD clarified that the said separation requirement of not more than 30m apart for smoke outlets applied only to the external discharge points but not to the internal smoke intake openings within the basement. In addition, the BD highlighted that the internal smoke intake openings within the basement should be evenly distributed and provided to every fire compartment and met the aggregated area requirements and other requirements in Clause C14.2 of the FS Code 2011 unless a dynamic smoke extraction system was to be provided in accordance with Clause C14.3 of the FS Code 2011.</p> <p>(c) The BD advised that a school building as a whole could be considered as an educational establishment and if under the control of one operator, could be considered as under single occupancy. As such, multi-purpose rooms/classrooms etc. should all be considered as under the same use classification and a single occupancy. The BD requested HKIA to provide information on specific uses where fire separation was uncertain if necessary.</p> <p>(d) The BD confirmed that it was acceptable to include all required staircases into the calculation for minimum total width of exit routes if the width of these required staircases were not in excess of 50% above the width of the narrowest staircase according to Clause B8.1(b) of the FS Code 2011. The BD further advised that normally it might not be necessary to determine the minimum width of required staircases by dividing the total discharge value by the number of staircases and it was acceptable to have required staircases at different sizes provided that the width of the required staircases would satisfy the requirements in Table B2 of the FS Code 2011.</p>	
			<p style="text-align: center;"><u>BD clarified</u></p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
1500mm	APSEC Discussion Forum on 16 May 2014	<u>Questions</u>	<p>The FS Code – Temporary Refuge Spaces (TRS)</p> <p>(a) Whether alternative arrangement shown on attached modified Diagram B6 of the TRS is acceptable (Mark A).</p> <p>(b) Whether the modified Diagram B7 better shows the intent (Mark C and Mark D).</p> <p>(c) Acceptable dead end distance for manoeuvring of wheelchairs in corridor as per 31(2) of BFA 2008. Apparently there is discrepancy in the Diagram in the Addenda as there is no dead end situation for wheelchair manoeuvring. Please confirm that the marking on the modified Diagram B6 is acceptable (Mark B).</p> <p>a) The BD advised that it was not the intention that the TRS should abut the 1500 x 1500mm fireman lift lobby zone. The arrangement at Mark A could be accepted in principle. [Post-meeting note: The clear width of the exit route adjacent to the TRS should comply with FS Code.]</p> <p>(b) The BD had no objection to the arrangement shown in Marks C and D as the minimum width of the exit route would not be reduced due to the TRS. The BD would review these diagrams.</p> <p>(c) The BD would clarify whether the 3500mm distance should include the 1.5m x 1.5m wheelchair turning space at dead-end.</p> <p>Diagram B6: Temporary Refuge Spaces</p> <p>Example (a): temporary refuge space in fireman's lift lobby</p> <p>Example (b): temporary refuge spaces in fireman's lift lobby</p>	
	APSEC Discussion Forum on 16 May 2014	<u>BD clarified</u>		

-  Lobby to fireman's lift of minimum dimensions of 1.5m to be used as wheelchair manoeuvring space
-  1.5m x 1.5m wheelchair manoeuvring space at 3.5m deadend
-  Temporary refuge space (0.75m x 1.5m) in fireman's lift lobby
-  Minimum width of exit route
-  Fire rated door for accommodation
-  Accessible Lift

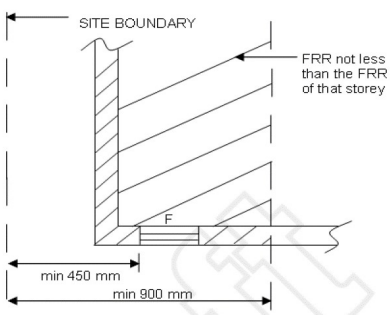
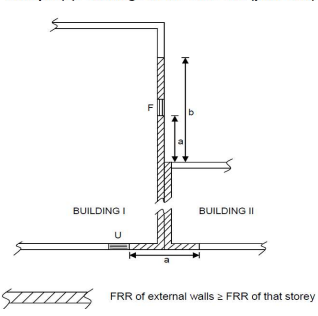
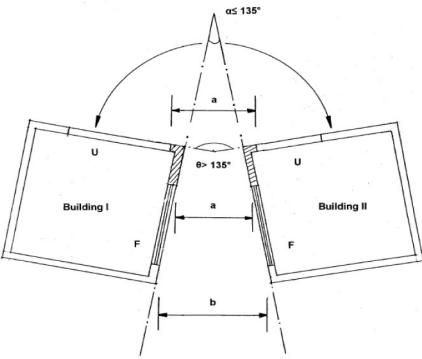
DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
	<p>APSEC Discussion Forum on 16 May 2014</p> <p>  Lobby to fireman's lift of minimum dimensions of 1.5m to be used as wheelchair manoeuvring space  1.5m x 1.5m wheelchair manoeuvring space at 3.5m deadend  Temporary refuge space (0.75m x 1.5m) in fireman's lift lobby  Minimum width of exit route  Fire rated door for accommodation  Accessible Lift </p>	BD clarified	<p>Example (c) : temporary refuge space in protected lobby</p>   <p>L Minimum length of 1.2m for wheelchair users W Minimum width of exit route</p>	
1500mm	<p>APSEC Discussion Forum on 12 August 2016</p>	Questions	<p>Manoeuvring Space for Barrier Free Access to Refuse Collection Room As per paragraph 31(2) of the Design Manual for Barrier Free Access 2008, a space of not less than 1500mm x 1500mm shall be provided within 3500mm of every dead end. In this regard, please clarify if it is acceptable when such space is NOT provided immediately in front of the access to a Refuse Collection Room (RCM) at a typical domestic floor; providing that such 1500mm x 1500mm space is located at a reasonable distance away from the RCM for the wheelchair user to manoeuvre back to his/her original position.</p>	
		BD clarified	<p>BD shared the same understanding. There was no requirement of providing a 1500mm x 1500mm space immediately in front of the access to a Refuse Collection Room (RCM); provided that such space was available at a reasonable distance from the RCM .</p>	
	<p>APSEC Discussion Forum on 4 November 2016</p>	Questions	<p>Exit routes discharge into a lane When a lane is not a deadend lane but a thoroughfare, there are 2 directions which people can discharge. Will BD allow the total width of MOE of proposed building discharging into the lane be doubled the width of the lane when it is a thoroughfare? (For example, a building with 4 nos. of 1500mm MOE stair can all discharge into a lane of 3m wide provided that the lane is a thoroughfare and its entire width is not less than 3m)</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
1500mm	APSEC Discussion Forum on 4 November 2016	<u>BD clarified</u>	<p>BD stressed that MOE must discharge to an Ultimate Place of Safety <i>not less than 1.5m wide or with width of the total required width of exits discharging into the area, whichever the greater.</i> In the case of MOE discharging to a lane, the width of the lane should not be less than the total width of MOE discharging onto that lane. As it would not be possible to predict the direction to which people would discharge after reaching the lane from the MOE stairs, assuming evacuees would escape orderly in two directions thus taking the total provided width was 2 times the width of the lane would not normally be accepted. Nevertheless, BD would consider justifications on individual cases e.g. phased evacuation of large developments in determining the minimum required width of lanes.</p>	
	APSEC Discussion Forum on 19 May 2017	<p><u>Questions</u></p> <p><u>BD clarified</u></p>	<p><u>Pipe Ducts and Pipe Wells</u> In order to obviate access difficulties and facilitate future maintenance of common drains, PNAP APP-93 stipulates the criteria that <i>pipe ducts and pipe wells need to fulfill. For instance, size of pipe well shall not be less than 1200mm x 1500mm, and an unobstructed working space of not less than 700mm shall be provided in front of pipes in pipe duct, etc.</i> However, at times, these minimum criteria are regarded as the maximum allowable by some case officers for GFA exemption, and this unnecessarily restricts the design flexibility in architectural layout. We believe such onerous approach is certainly not the genuine intent of the PNAP, and that pipe wells with sizes exceeding the minimum requirement could also be considered acceptable for GFA exemption providing that reasonable justifications, e.g. pipe layouts to demonstrate the necessity, are provided. Would the BD please confirm that our understanding is correct.</p> <p><u>BD had the same understanding.</u> Favourable consideration would be given to designs indicating sizes of services and minimum provisions necessary for housing and repairing such in the pipe ducts and wells. Furthermore, designs should not attract convenient conversion of such spaces, whether in front of or inside the ducts and wells, into other uses.</p>	

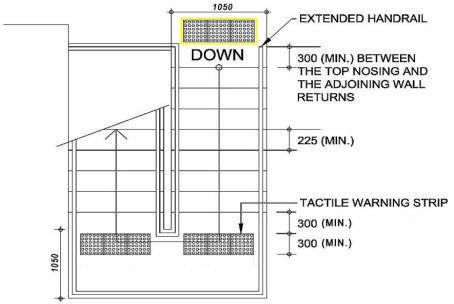
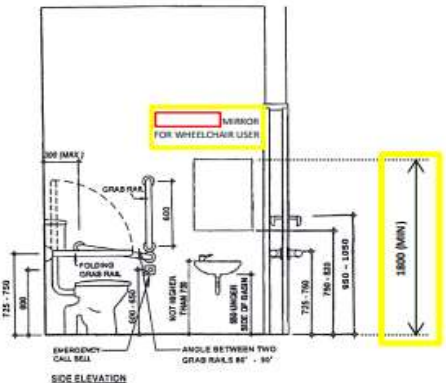
DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
1500mm	APSEC Discussion Forum on 18 January 2019	<u>Questions</u>	<p><u>Clear Space at Foot of Accessible Ramp</u> (Item raised by AAP) Pursuant to paragraph 16 in Division 5 of Chapter 4 of DMBFA 2008, a clear space of not less than 1500mm x 1500mm shall be provided at the head and foot of every ramp. As regards a G/F entrance ramp abutting a public pavement, we would like to clarify whether a clear space within the development of not less than 1500mm in width and 900mm in depth (i.e.600mm for tactile warning strip and 300mm for horizontal extension of the handrails) would be required at the foot of the ramp. A sketch is provided below for reference.</p> <p>LANDING REQUIREMENT FOR RAMP FOR BARRIER FREE ACCESS CASE 1</p> <p>LANDING REQUIREMENT FOR RAMP FOR BARRIER FREE ACCESS CASE 2</p> <p>BD would review and further advise. [Post Meeting Notes: BD confirmed that, for G/F entrance ramp abutting a public pavement, the provision of the 1500mm x 1500mm clear space at the foot of the ramp wholly within the curtilage of the development was not required provided that such clearance space would be available in the pavement for direct entry to and exit from the building. Notwithstanding this, a clear space within the development of not less than 900mm in depth, i.e. 600mm for tactile warning strip and 300mm for horizontal extension of the handrails as shown in Figures 7 and 16A of the DMBFA 2008 respectively, was still required to be provided at the foot of the ramp.]</p>	
		<u>BD clarified</u>		

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
1800	Building (Refuse Storage and Material Recovery Chambers and Refuse Chutes) Regulations	Regulation 11	<p>10. Access door to refuse storage and material recovery chambers and construction thereof</p> <p>(1) Every refuse storage and material recovery chamber shall be provided with a close-fitting steel door.</p> <p>(2) Every such door shall—</p> <p>(a) be situated in an external wall of the refuse storage and material recovery chamber;</p> <p>(b) have a height of not less than 1.8 m;</p> <p>(c) have a width of not less than 1.25 m; and (d) be provided with a lock or other means of preventing unauthorized persons obtaining access to the refuse storage and material recovery chamber.</p> <p>(3) The internal surface of the door shall be without projections.</p>	
	Building (Standards of Sanitary Fitments, Plumbing, Drainage Works and Latrines) Regulations	Part V Septic Tanks	<p>66. Construction</p> <p>(1) Every septic tank shall—</p> <p>(a) have a depth of at least 1.2 m but not more than 1.8 m from the invert of the inlet to the floor of the tank;</p> <p>(b) have a length not less than 3 times but not more than 4 times its width;</p> <p>(c) be provided with adequate means of access for the inspection and cleansing of each chamber. (L.N. 361 of 1980)</p>	
	The Code of Practice on Access for External Maintenance	2. Specific Requirements	<p>2.2 Maintenance access window</p> <p>2.2.1 Access opening of a maintenance access window shall have a clearance of not less than 460 mm wide by 1100 mm high to enable the operation for M&R including material delivery. The sill of the window shall at a height of not less than 1.1 m above the internal floor finished level of the adjoining floor. One or more permanent cast-in anchors shall be provided at the external wall for anchoring of the fall arresting devices by each worker before climbing out to the external.</p> <p>2.2.2 The cast-in anchors shall be located at a position which is close to the maintenance access windows and readily accessible by the worker and at a height of not less than 1.5 m and not more than 1.8 m above floor finished level of the adjoining floor. The maintenance access window when opened shall not obstruct the worker from using the cast-in anchors.</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks																																																																																																																																																																																				
	Manuals	Page/Table																																																																																																																																																																																						
1800		Subsection B12 - Discharge Value and Width of Required Staircase	<p>Table B3: Discharge Value of a Required Staircase in a Non-Sprinkler Protected Building</p> <p>Table B3: Discharge Value of a Required Staircase in a Non-Sprinkler Protected Building</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th rowspan="2">No. of storeys served</th> <th colspan="6">Width of required staircase</th> </tr> <tr> <th>1050mm but under 1200mm</th> <th>1200mm but under 1350mm</th> <th>1350mm but under 1500mm</th> <th>1500mm but under 1600mm</th> <th>1600mm but under 1700mm</th> <th>1700mm to 1800mm</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>1</td><td>210</td><td>240</td><td>270</td><td>300</td><td>320</td><td>340</td></tr> <tr><td>2</td><td>242</td><td>278</td><td>315</td><td>351</td><td>377</td><td>402</td></tr> <tr><td>3</td><td>274</td><td>316</td><td>360</td><td>402</td><td>434</td><td>464</td></tr> <tr><td>4</td><td>306</td><td>354</td><td>405</td><td>453</td><td>491</td><td>526</td></tr> <tr><td>5</td><td>338</td><td>392</td><td>450</td><td>504</td><td>548</td><td>588</td></tr> <tr><td>6</td><td>370</td><td>430</td><td>495</td><td>555</td><td>605</td><td>650</td></tr> <tr><td>7</td><td>402</td><td>468</td><td>540</td><td>606</td><td>662</td><td>712</td></tr> <tr><td>8</td><td>434</td><td>506</td><td>585</td><td>657</td><td>719</td><td>774</td></tr> <tr><td>9</td><td>466</td><td>544</td><td>630</td><td>708</td><td>776</td><td>836</td></tr> <tr><td>10</td><td>498</td><td>582</td><td>675</td><td>759</td><td>833</td><td>898</td></tr> <tr><td>Each additional storey add</td><td>32</td><td>38</td><td>45</td><td>51</td><td>57</td><td>62</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Note:</p> <p>1. The discharge value of a required staircase having a width of more than 1800mm may be obtained by using linear projection from the table.</p> <p>Table B4</p> <p>Table B4: Discharge Value of a Required Staircase in a Sprinkler Protected Building</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th rowspan="2">No. of storeys served</th> <th colspan="6">Width of required staircase</th> </tr> <tr> <th>1050mm but under 1200mm</th> <th>1200mm but under 1350mm</th> <th>1350mm but under 1500mm</th> <th>1500mm but under 1600mm</th> <th>1600mm but under 1700mm</th> <th>1700mm to 1800mm</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr><td>1</td><td>420</td><td>480</td><td>540</td><td>600</td><td>640</td><td>680</td></tr> <tr><td>2</td><td>452</td><td>518</td><td>585</td><td>651</td><td>697</td><td>742</td></tr> <tr><td>3</td><td>484</td><td>556</td><td>630</td><td>702</td><td>754</td><td>804</td></tr> <tr><td>4</td><td>516</td><td>594</td><td>675</td><td>753</td><td>811</td><td>866</td></tr> <tr><td>5</td><td>548</td><td>632</td><td>720</td><td>804</td><td>868</td><td>928</td></tr> <tr><td>6</td><td>580</td><td>670</td><td>765</td><td>855</td><td>925</td><td>990</td></tr> <tr><td>7</td><td>612</td><td>708</td><td>810</td><td>906</td><td>982</td><td>1052</td></tr> <tr><td>8</td><td>644</td><td>746</td><td>855</td><td>957</td><td>1039</td><td>1114</td></tr> <tr><td>9</td><td>676</td><td>784</td><td>900</td><td>1008</td><td>1096</td><td>1176</td></tr> <tr><td>10</td><td>708</td><td>822</td><td>945</td><td>1059</td><td>1153</td><td>1238</td></tr> <tr><td>Each additional storey add</td><td>32</td><td>38</td><td>45</td><td>51</td><td>57</td><td>62</td></tr> </tbody> </table>	No. of storeys served	Width of required staircase						1050mm but under 1200mm	1200mm but under 1350mm	1350mm but under 1500mm	1500mm but under 1600mm	1600mm but under 1700mm	1700mm to 1800mm	1	210	240	270	300	320	340	2	242	278	315	351	377	402	3	274	316	360	402	434	464	4	306	354	405	453	491	526	5	338	392	450	504	548	588	6	370	430	495	555	605	650	7	402	468	540	606	662	712	8	434	506	585	657	719	774	9	466	544	630	708	776	836	10	498	582	675	759	833	898	Each additional storey add	32	38	45	51	57	62	No. of storeys served	Width of required staircase						1050mm but under 1200mm	1200mm but under 1350mm	1350mm but under 1500mm	1500mm but under 1600mm	1600mm but under 1700mm	1700mm to 1800mm	1	420	480	540	600	640	680	2	452	518	585	651	697	742	3	484	556	630	702	754	804	4	516	594	675	753	811	866	5	548	632	720	804	868	928	6	580	670	765	855	925	990	7	612	708	810	906	982	1052	8	644	746	855	957	1039	1114	9	676	784	900	1008	1096	1176	10	708	822	945	1059	1153	1238	Each additional storey add	32	38	45	51	57	62	
	No. of storeys served	Width of required staircase																																																																																																																																																																																						
1050mm but under 1200mm		1200mm but under 1350mm	1350mm but under 1500mm	1500mm but under 1600mm	1600mm but under 1700mm	1700mm to 1800mm																																																																																																																																																																																		
1	210	240	270	300	320	340																																																																																																																																																																																		
2	242	278	315	351	377	402																																																																																																																																																																																		
3	274	316	360	402	434	464																																																																																																																																																																																		
4	306	354	405	453	491	526																																																																																																																																																																																		
5	338	392	450	504	548	588																																																																																																																																																																																		
6	370	430	495	555	605	650																																																																																																																																																																																		
7	402	468	540	606	662	712																																																																																																																																																																																		
8	434	506	585	657	719	774																																																																																																																																																																																		
9	466	544	630	708	776	836																																																																																																																																																																																		
10	498	582	675	759	833	898																																																																																																																																																																																		
Each additional storey add	32	38	45	51	57	62																																																																																																																																																																																		
No. of storeys served	Width of required staircase																																																																																																																																																																																							
	1050mm but under 1200mm	1200mm but under 1350mm	1350mm but under 1500mm	1500mm but under 1600mm	1600mm but under 1700mm	1700mm to 1800mm																																																																																																																																																																																		
1	420	480	540	600	640	680																																																																																																																																																																																		
2	452	518	585	651	697	742																																																																																																																																																																																		
3	484	556	630	702	754	804																																																																																																																																																																																		
4	516	594	675	753	811	866																																																																																																																																																																																		
5	548	632	720	804	868	928																																																																																																																																																																																		
6	580	670	765	855	925	990																																																																																																																																																																																		
7	612	708	810	906	982	1052																																																																																																																																																																																		
8	644	746	855	957	1039	1114																																																																																																																																																																																		
9	676	784	900	1008	1096	1176																																																																																																																																																																																		
10	708	822	945	1059	1153	1238																																																																																																																																																																																		
Each additional storey add	32	38	45	51	57	62																																																																																																																																																																																		
		Subsection B14 – Construction of Required Staircases	<p>Clause B14.5</p> <p>No required staircase should exceed 1800mm in width. If a wider staircase is required, it should be divided by a central handrail into separate sections such that each section should be not less than 1050mm but not more than 1800mm in width.</p>																																																																																																																																																																																					

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
1800	Code of Practice for Fire Safety in Buildings 2011	Diagram C1: Prevention of Fire Spread between Buildings (See Clauses C5.2 and C5.3)	<p>Example (a): Buildings not on the same site (plan view)</p>  <p>Example (b): Buildings on the same site (plan view)</p>  <p>F fixed lights having an FRR not less than that of the storey U unprotected openings a min. 900mm b min. 1800mm</p> <p>Example (c): The minimum distance between unprotected openings of two buildings on the same site (plan view)</p>  <p>FRR of external walls \geq FRR of that storey F Fixed lights having an FRR not less than that of the storey U unprotected openings a min. 900mm b min. 1800mm θ The angle made between facades of two adjoining buildings $> 135^\circ$ α The angle made between facades of two adjoining buildings $\leq 135^\circ$</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks															
	Manuals	Page/Table																	
1800			<p>Example (d): The minimum distance between unprotected openings of two buildings (Section view)</p> <p>FRR of external walls/roof \geq FRR of that storey</p> <p>U unprotected openings</p> <p>b min. 1800mm</p>																
		Division 5 --- RAMPS	<p>BEST PRACTICE SECTION</p> <p>B. Recommended Design Requirements</p> <p>(a)</p> <p>A ramp should have a running slope 1:12 (8.33%) to 1:20 (5%).</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Maximum slope</th> <th>Maximum length</th> <th>Maximum rise</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>1:20 i.e., 5.00%</td> <td>10000 mm</td> <td>500 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1:16 i.e., 6.25%</td> <td>6400 mm</td> <td>400 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1:14 i.e., 7.14%</td> <td>4200 mm</td> <td>300 mm</td> </tr> <tr> <td>1:12 i.e., 8.33%</td> <td>1800 mm</td> <td>150 mm</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>(b) Width should be at least 1200 mm to enable a wheelchair to turn or preferably at least 1500 mm to allow 2 wheelchairs to pass.</p> <p>(c) A ramp should have slip-resistant surface with a minimum "static coefficient of friction" of "Very Good" grading (see Appendix C).</p> <p>(d) Tactile warning strips at the head, foot and landing should have a minimum luminous contrast of 70% with the adjoining surfaces.</p> <p>(e) The floor and wall along a ramp should have a minimum luminous contrast of 30%.</p>	Maximum slope	Maximum length	Maximum rise	1:20 i.e., 5.00%	10000 mm	500 mm	1:16 i.e., 6.25%	6400 mm	400 mm	1:14 i.e., 7.14%	4200 mm	300 mm	1:12 i.e., 8.33%	1800 mm	150 mm	
	Maximum slope	Maximum length	Maximum rise																
1:20 i.e., 5.00%	10000 mm	500 mm																	
1:16 i.e., 6.25%	6400 mm	400 mm																	
1:14 i.e., 7.14%	4200 mm	300 mm																	
1:12 i.e., 8.33%	1800 mm	150 mm																	
		<p>BEST PRACTICE SECTION</p> <p>B. Recommended Design Requirements Dimension and Orientation</p> <p>(a) For any internal stair with heavy circulation, riser should be reduced to 150 mm high and tread be increased to 300 mm wide for greater ease of use.</p> <p>(b) Individual flight should not exceed 1800 mm in height nor a total of 12 risers.</p> <p>(c) The top nosing of any flight should be built not less than 300 mm from the point at which the adjoining wall returns (see Figure 14).</p> <p>(d) Winder, spiral staircase and splayed step should be avoided.</p>																	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
1800	Design Manual Barrier Free Access 2008	Division 7 --- STEPS AND STAIRCASES	 <p>Figure 14 – Example of Staircase Plan for Persons with a Disability Luminous Contrast</p> <p>€ Non-slip nosing should have a minimum luminous contrast of 30% with the adjoining surfaces.</p> <p>(f) Treads of staircase should have a minimum luminous contrast of 30% with the walls.</p>	
		13. Section B in Division 19 of Chapter 4*	Mirror in Accessible Lift Car (i) A non-breakable mirror or mirror-like surface should be provided inside an accessible lift car to allow visual feedback for wheelchair users when reversing backwards into the lift lobby. Such provision should have a clear width not less than 850 mm and its bottom and top edges should be not more than 300 mm and not less than 1800 mm above the floor of the lift car respectively.	
		Summary of Amendments to the Design Manual: Barrier Free Access 2008 (October 2020) Summary of Amendments to the Design Manual: Barrier Free Access 2008 (June 2019)		

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
1800	Practice Note for Authorized Persons and Registered Structural Engineers	APP-120 Concrete Batching Plant	<p>Appendix B (APP-120)</p> <p>In respect of those type of CBP's as shown in Appendix A (the number of production lines may vary) the following arrangements under the BO will be accepted: -</p> <p>New CBP</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Requirements for Fire Resisting Construction (FRC) will be waived provided no part of the CBP is within 1800mm of the site boundary other than a sea wall and the gross floor area (GFA) of the control room does not exceed 30m² per production line. Water storage tanks and settlement pits will normally be allowed up to the site boundary without FRC requirements.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Means of escape (MOE) requirements will be waived provided that the GFA of the control room does not exceed 30m² per production line and the number of personnel in it does not exceed 5 per production line. The clear width of any staircase access to the control room should be not less than 750mm clear with a handrail each side and with a going not exceeding 45°. Requirements under Building (Planning) Regulation 72 in respect of the identified control room will be waived if the above criteria are met.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> The above waiver on FRC, MOE and Building (Planning) Regulation 72 requirements are subject to the following conditions -</p> <p>(i) the number of production lines does not exceed 4 and</p> <p>(ii) the total GFA of all control rooms does not exceed 100 m² .</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> If drainage connections or discharges off-site are made any requirements of Drainage Services Department and Environmental Protection Department must be met. Drainage details may be included on the general building plan submission.</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> Plot ratio and site coverage calculations may exclude conveyor belts, but not their supporting structures. Plot ratio calculations based on the site coverage area may be accepted subject to extra office floors and the like at other levels being included.</p>	

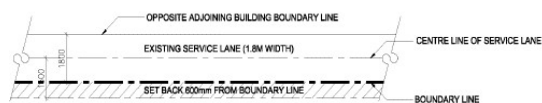
DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
1800	Practice Note for Authorized Persons	APP-29 Lift and Escalator Installations	<p>Appendix B (PNAP APP-29) Amendments to the Code of Practice for Building Works for Lifts and Escalators 2011 (September 2019)</p> <p>3.8.5 One or more permanent anchorages shall be provided adjacent to the lift landing door at the lowest landing floor for anchoring of the fall arresting devices by each worker before going down to the lift pit. To limit the distance of any fall, the anchorage points shall be located at a height between 1.5 and 1.8m above floor finished level of the landing floor and a position which is readily accessible by the worker. Subject to the provision of lift pit access door meeting the requirements under paragraph 3.8.3, these anchorages are not required.</p>	
	and Registered Structural Engineers	APP-37 Curtain Wall, Window and Window Wall	<p>Structural Submission of Window or Window Wall Plans</p> <p>3. In general, window and window wall should satisfy the performance requirements stipulated in the B(C)R, the requirements on lighting and ventilation stipulated in the Building (Planning) Regulations (B(P)R) and relevant codes of practice.</p> <p>4. If a window or window wall is at a location where the design wind pressure, q_z, is 2.86 kPa or above and forms wholly or partly the external wall of a building as well as having structural opening with least dimension exceeding 1.8m or an area exceeding 6m², structural framing and key structural details, excluding any unnecessary shop fabrication details should be submitted for approval. The submission should contain the following information to demonstrate that the window or window wall is of adequate strength and stability:</p> <p>(a) information described in items (b) to (g) and (j) to (l) of paragraph 2 above;</p> <p>(b) structural adequacy in resisting horizontal imposed loads specified in Table 3 of regulation 17(3) of the B(C)R for the window or window wall that functions as a protective barrier; and</p> <p>(c) deflection checks to ensure that the maximum deflection of the structural elements does not exceed the deflection limits stipulated in the Code of Practice for Structural Use of Glass 2018 (Glass Code).</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
1800	APSEC Discussion Forum on 13 January 2017	<u>Questions</u>	<p>Hoarding Works</p> <p>a. While hoarding is usually required to separate portion(s) of a site under Phased OP (POP) application from the rest of the site which is underconstruction, we opine that hoarding with fire resistance rating should not be required if the completed building (under POP application) has a clear minimum separation from the POP boundary for, say, 900mm. Please advise if this would be acceptable to BD.</p> <p>b. Except for demolition works, it has been the usual practice that consent for superstructure works could be granted so far as the espective hoarding plans and hoarding permit have been accepted and granted; and that the hoarding for superstructure works would be in place prior to actual commencement of works. However, our members expressed that there are recent cases where superstructure consent can only be granted upon completion of hoarding for superstructure. Please clarify if this is unnecessary or there is a change in practice.</p>	
		<u>BD clarified</u>	<p>Item 1a</p> <p>In order to assure safe occupation, if part of a building was under Phased OP (POP), the POP areas should be separated from the construction site within the building envelop by fire barriers having adequate FRR commensurate with the circumstances and use and in no case less than 2-hour as if for separate buildings. Access to construction sites via POP areas would not be normally permitted unless for difficult sites and with necessary safety precautionary measures in place to the satisfaction of the BD. For POP areas delineated discretely by fence walls from construction sites in open areas, BD viewed that the fence wall need not be fire-rated in general provided that a clear separating distance without fire load between the completed POP boundary fence wall and the completed building was not less than 1800mm. Other factor that BD would consider in requiring portion of hoarding to be fire-rated would include the proximity of the MOE path to the POP boundary fence wall. The necessary measures for protection against falling objects, if necessary, should be taken into account on top of the fire separation requirements.</p>	

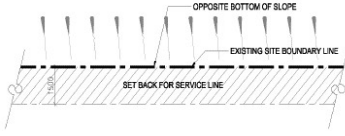
DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
1800			<p>Item 1b</p> <p>BD advised that there had not been a change in the practice in this regard. Superstructure consent applications could generally be granted when the respective hoarding plans had been submitted to BD and all the relevant conditions complied with. It would be the AP/RSE's duty to ensure that the hoarding works were in gear with the progress of the construction. However, hoarding and other protective measures must be satisfactorily erected before demolition consent could be considered.</p>	
	APSEC Discussion Forum on 3 August 2012	<u>Questions</u>	<p>APP-37 (PNAP 106) for Windows</p> <p>A) Under para. 4(ii), submission is required if window least dimension>1.8m "or" opening area >6 sq m. Before the PNAP is revised on May 2012, the criteria for submission are satisfying both but not either one. The PNAP is effective immediately and it does interrupt our construction progress because windows do not require BD submission previously are, ready for installation. We then have to wait the construction to go through the submission process. Is it possible that in the future, change of submission rules will only be applicable for GBPs with consent not yet grant?</p> <p>B) Under para.21 for the RSE supervision frequency for heat soak process, it specifies min. 30% of the tempered glass panes used in the project. Does it mean 30% of total number of pieces of glass panes, disregarding the variation in type and size and different manufacturer? And excluding the failure pieces? Will it be applicable for works under the MWCS?</p>	
		<u>BD clarified</u>	<p>For (A): There could be a misunderstanding of the revision made to APP-137 on the criteria for requiring formal submission of windows or window wall system. In fact, there is no change in the requirements/conditions for plans to be submitted for approval.</p> <p>For (B): The supervision of heat soak process should cover a minimum of 30% of the total glass panes (not for each size). The supervision requirement will not be applicable to the Minor Works.</p>	
	5/2012 APSEC Discussion Forum on 26 October 2012	<u>Questions</u>	<p>Refuge Roof</p> <p>Unlike Refuge Floor, there is no requirement that the Refuge Roof must be without other facilities. As long as COP FS B18.3 can be complied other facilities (private roof garden directly accessible from units at the top floor, farming plot, water feature etc) can be provided next to the refuge area.</p> <p>Please clarify if the above understanding is correct.</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
1800	5/2012 APSEC Discussion Forum on 26 October 2012	<u>BD clarified</u>	BD pointed out that it had been spelled out in the Commentary for Clause B18.3 of the FS Code (as promulgated in April 2012) that for a roof partly designated as refuge area and partly designated as private roof, no structures other than a stairhood would be allowed in the private roof area. <i>The private roof area should be separated from the required refuge area by a solid fence wall of not less than 1.5m high, any stairhood at the private roof area to be erected within 1.8m of the required refuge area should have an FRR of not less than -/60/60.</i>	
	3/2016 APSEC Discussion Forum on 27 May 2016	<u>Questions</u>	<i>Discharge Value (DV) of 1.8m Staircase</i> <i>It is noted that the DV of a 1.8m staircase</i> (whether for sprinklered or non-sprinklered building) is smaller in the Fire Safety Code 2011 as compared with that in the old MOE Code. Thus, when proposing A&A works to add extra storeys on top of an existing building (which followed the old MOE Code) <i>with 1.8m wide staircases, it would result in a situation where the DV of the extended 1.8m staircases of the additional storeys be different from that of the existing building below.</i> Please advise if the above approach is correct.	
		<u>BD clarified</u>	<i>BD advised that the DV of the existing portion of the staircases should follow the MOE Code applicable at the time of approving the subject plans. However, the additional DV resulting from the proposed additional storeys should follow the DV for "each additional storey" as stipulated in the current Fire Safety Code</i>	
	2/2017 APSEC Discussion Forum on 17 March 2017	<u>Questions</u>	Requirement of Structural Submission for Aluminium Windows / Balcony doors under PNAP-APP 37 There have been feedbacks that even when the window size is smaller than the limit stipulated in para.4(ii) of PNAP APP-37, BD officer still requires structural submission for the sliding doors to balconies or UPs. We wish to know whether there are any other onsiderations to require such submission. <i>For demonstration purpose, we provide the following example: A window installed at the structural opening of 2.5m high and 1.79m wide does not require structural submission as per specified in para. 4 of PNAP APP-37. (least dimension <1.8m, and area <6m2).</i> We wish to know if our understanding is correct. Further to the above, we wish BD to clarify whether French doors or sliding doors leading to balconies or UPs could be considered as 'windows' and structural submissions are required if the thresholds of wind load and sizes as stipulated in para. 4 of PNAP APP-37 are met.	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
1800	2/2017 APSEC Discussion Forum on 17 March 2017	<u>BD clarified</u>	BD had the same understanding on the example provided. However, BD pointed out that as the French doors or sliding doors at external walls opening onto balconies or UPs were subject to similar conditions to that of windows, para 4 of PNAP APP-37 should also apply to them.	
	4 /2017 APSEC Discussion Forum on 1 1 August 2017	<u>Questions</u>	5/2014 Q14 Follow-up – Wider Corridor GFA Exemption with TRS Based on reply on Q14 of 5/2014 and JPN1 • Lobby without TRS – width between 1.65m and 2.5m can be GFA exempted (just follow JPN1) • Lobby with TRS – Width of Lobby LESS MOE Route Width LESS TRS Width can be GFA exempted, provided lobby width not more than 2.5m (follow Forum) when conditions under the JPN1 can be followed.We wish to know whether the same principle applies for wider corridor: Corridor without TRS – width between 1.2m to 2.2m can be exempted • Corridor with TRS – Width of Corridor LESS TRS Width LESS MOE Route Width can be exempted, provided corridor width not more than 2.2m.	
		<u>BD clarified</u>	BD advised that the interpretation was agreeable and confirmed that the following would be GFA accountable: • The 1.5m x 1.5m required wheelchair manoeuvring space in corridors. • When a required TRS of 0.75m wide along the corridor also served as MOE route, 1.8m (1.05+0.75m) min total width of the part of the corridor. BD further affirmed that TRS could overlap with BFA wheelchair manoeuvring space but not the 1.05m exit route.	
	<u>Questions</u>	Service Lane B(P)R 28 requires that every domestic building shall be provided with a service lane, would BD please confirm if the following scenarios are considered acceptable: Scenario 1 When there is an existing service lane of 1.8m wide adjoining the site, the building on the site is to set back 600mm from the lot boundary such that 1.5m width measured from the centreline of the service lane to the building on the site is provided. Upon development of the opposite site, a lane of not less than 3m wide could be achieved.		



PLAN OF EXISTING SERVICE LANE (SCENARIO 1)
(CLASS A SITE)

DATA	Related Requisitions		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
1800	4/2020 APSEC Discussion Forum on 26 November 2020		<p>Scenario 2</p> <p>When there is no existing service lane and the site is abutting an existing slope, the building on the site is to set back 1.5m from the lot boundary as shown in the diagram.</p>  <p>PLAN OF SET BACK FOR SERVICE LANE OF REDEVELOPMENT (SCENARIO 2) (CLASS A SITE)</p>	
		<u>BD clarified</u>	<p>BD advised that, pursuant to paragraph 10 of PNAP APP-73, the long-term objective was that upon full development of abutting sites, a lane would be direct and have an unobstructed width of not less than 3m.</p> <p>In this connection, if there were sites abutting on both sides of the lane, a setback of 1.5m on each side would be acceptable, otherwise a setback of 3m should be provided.</p> <p>For Scenario 1, if the existing 1.8m service lane was a public lane, then a setback of 600mm would be acceptable on each side. On the other hand, if the existing 1.8m service lane was a private lane (no matter the site had the right of way over such private lane), a setback of 1.5m should be provided.</p> <p>For Scenario 2, if there was no building site at the other side, then a setback of 3m should be provided.</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
2500	Building (Planning) Regulations (Cap. 123 sub. leg. F)	Part I General	<p>4. Buildings not to obstruct, endanger or cause nuisances No building or fixture thereon shall be so constructed that it— (a) (i) obstructs; or (ii) endangers the users of any adjacent footpath or street; or (b) creates any nuisance; or (c) permits the escape into or over any adjacent footpath or street at a height of less than 2.5 m of any noxious gases or exhaust from any ventilating system. (L.N. 294 of 1976)</p>	
		Part II Projections	<p>7. Eaves, cornices, mouldings, etc. (1) An architectural projection (including eaves, cornice and moulding) that projects over a street— (a) must not project over the street more than 500 mm; and (b) must not project at a height of less than 2.5 m above the ground level. (2) A pipe or gutter (including the ppurtenances of the pipe or gutter) that projects over a street— (a) must not project over the street more than 300 mm; and (b) must not project at a height of less than 2.5 m above the ground level. (3) A specified structure that projects over a street— (a) must not project over the street more than 750 mm; and (b) must not project at a height of less than 2.5 m above the ground level. (4) A retractable awning that projects over a street— (a) must not project over the street more than 500 mm (when retracted) or more than 2.5 m (when fully extended) ; (b) must not project at a height of less than 2.5 m above the ground level; (c) if it projects over a street that has a carriage-way—must have a horizontal clearance of not less than 600 mm from the pavement kerb line; and</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
2500			<p>(d) if it projects over a street that consists only of a footpath—must have a horizontal clearance of not less than 1.5 m from the centre line of the footpath.</p> <p>(5) A metal ventilation duct (including the associated supporting frame) that projects over a street—</p> <p>(a) must not project over the street more than 750 mm;</p> <p>(b) must not project at a height of less than 2.5 m above the ground level; and</p> <p>(c) if the duct or any part of it is located on, or hung underneath the soffit of, a balcony, verandah or canopy of a building—must not project beyond the edge of the balcony, verandah or canopy.</p> <p>(6) In this regulation—</p> <p>pipe (喉管) includes a water pipe and a drain pipe; specified structure (指明構築物) means—</p> <p>(a) a drying rack; or</p> <p>(b) a supporting frame for an air-conditioning unit, light fitting, or antenna or transceiver for public telecommunications services.</p>	
		Part III Regulation 24	<p>24. Height of storeys</p> <p>(1) Every room used or intended to be used for the purpose of an office or for habitation in any building shall have a height of not less than 2.5 m measured from floor to ceiling: (L.N. 406 of 1987)</p> <p>Provided that there shall be not less than 2.3 m measured from the floor to the underside of any beam.</p> <p>(2) In any such room having a sloping ceiling, the height shall be measured to the mean height of such ceiling above floor level: Provided that no portion of any room shall have a height of less than 2 m.</p> <p>(3) (Repealed L.N. 406 of 1987) (L.N. 294 of 1976)</p>	
		Part III Regulation 27	<p>27. Cuttings</p> <p>(1) No building shall be built to abut against a cutting, including a toe wall supporting a cutting.</p> <p>(2) A clear intervening space or area of a width of not less than 1/4 of the height of the cutting shall be left between such building at ground floor level and the toe of the cutting.</p> <p>(3) Such intervening space or area shall in no case be less than 2.5 m in width. (L.N. 294 of 1976)</p> <p>(4) For the purposes of this regulation the height of the cutting shall be deemed to be the height measured on a vertical line drawn from the toe of such cutting, and extending from the finished ground or concreted surface to a point where it meets a line drawn downwards at an angle of 30 degrees with the horizontal from the top of the cutting.</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
2000	Code of Practice on Access for External Maintenance 2021	2.4 Maintenance door	<p>2.4.1 Maintenance door shall be of size not less than 600 mm wide by 2000 mm high. It shall be locked to avoid misuse and prevent unauthorised access. It shall also bear on the conspicuous part of its outside face a warning notice in English and Chinese in letters and characters not less than 25 mm high as follows :</p> <p style="text-align: center;">DANGER UNAUTHORISED ACCESS PROHIBITED CLOSE AND LOCK THIS DOOR 危險 不得擅進 請關閉並緊鎖此門</p>	
	Practice Note for Authorized Persons, Registered Structural Engineers and Registered Geotechnical Engineers	APP-21 Demolition Works Measures for Public Safety	<p>Design of Hoarding, Covered Walkway, Gantry and Catch Platform</p> <p>23. Reference could be made to Chapter 3 of the Demolition Code for the general design requirements of hoarding, covered walkway, gantry and catch platform. The deck of the catch platform shall be designed to support a uniformly distributed load of 5.0 kPa or a point load of 20 KN acting on an effective area of 300 mm x 300 mm. In accordance with the requirement as stipulated in clause 2.5 of the Code of Practice on Wind Effects in Hong Kong 2019 (Wind Code), a wind load of 37 % of the wind reference pressure as defined in clause 3.2 of the Wind Code without the adjustments for wind directionality and sheltering effect could be adopted for checking the stability of these structures.</p> <p>24. A design example of a gantry with single bay hoarding on each side is given in Appendix B for reference. If the catch platform which should have a minimum 2 000 mm distance from the existing building line encroaches into the 500 mm (minimum) recess from the arriageway, the catch platform shall be raised to allow 5 500 mm headroom over the carriageway. For narrow service lanes (width 3.5 m or less) which are generally shielded from the wind, a single deck design with the deck functioning as a catch platform fully capable of resisting the superimposed design loads is considered acceptable because of the relatively lower risk associated with these areas. A single deck design for narrow service lanes is given in Appendix B for reference. Structural justification may not be required if the parameters as adopted in the design examples are strictly followed.</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
2000	Practice Note for Authorized Persons, Registered Structural Engineers and Registered Geotechnical Engineers	APP-21 Demolition Works Measures for Public Safety	25. Site constraints such as the presence of congested underground utilities and narrow pedestrian walkways may sometimes prohibit the construction of footings and counterweight, or render the sole reliance on counterweight for maintaining stability uneconomical. Under such circumstances, AP/RSE are encouraged to consider more economical designs with recyclable materials as alternatives to the examples given in Appendix B. Such alternatives may include the adoption of a rigorous analysis and/or the provision of tie forces at upper levels in securing the stability of the structure, thus reducing counterweight and/or some structural members' sizes.	
		APP-19 Projections in relation to Site Coverage and Plot Ratio Building (Planning) Regulations 20 & 2	Minor projecting features (a) pitched roof eaves and flat roof overhangs complying with the projection and clear height limits in regulation 7(1) of the B(P)R (provided they are not contained within parapet walls as part of an accessible flat roof); (b) individual air-conditioner boxes and platforms of reasonable size and projecting not more than 750 mm, which have a built-in system for condensate disposal; (c) air-conditioner platforms complying with Appendices B and C of Code of Practice on Design for Safety – External Maintenance; (d) individual projections / window hoods complying with B(P)R and porches having projection not exceeding 2 m; (e) window cills and window surrounds projecting not more than 100 mm; (f) string courses, fins and architectural mouldings complying with the projection and clear height limits in regulation 7(1) of the B(P)R (but not structural beams and columns);	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks						
	Manuals	Page/Table								
2000	Practice Note for Authorized Persons, Registered Structural Engineers and Registered Geotechnical Engineers	APP-19 Projections in relation to Site Coverage and Plot Ratio Building (Planning) Regulations 20 & 2	<p>(g) window flower boxes projecting not more than 500 mm and complying with the design requirements as illustrated in the sketch in Appendix A;</p> <p>(h) external drainage pipes and gutters complying with the projection and clear height limits in regulation 7(2) of the B(P)R;</p> <p>(i) sunshades solely used for the purpose of energy conservation projecting not more than 1.5m from the external wall complying with the criteria set out in Practice Note for Authorized Persons, Registered Structural Engineers and Registered Geotechnical Engineers (PNAP) APP-67 and PNAP APP-156;</p> <p>(j) reflectors projecting not more than 1.5 m from the external walls, subject to submission of quantitative assessment of environmental benefits to the Building Authority for onsideration in case they project over 0.5 m from the external walls;</p> <p>(k) canopies projecting not more than 2 m over an entrance to a building;</p> <p>(l) drying racks and supporting frames for light fittings, antennas or transceivers for public telecommunications services complying with the projection and clear height limits in regulation 7(3) of the B(P)R;</p>							
		APP-23 Hoardings, Covered Walkways and Gantries (including Temporary Access for Construction Vehicles) Part IX of Building (Planning) Regulations	<p>(m) retractable awnings for external wall openings complying with the projection and clear height limits in regulation 7(4) of the B(P)R and applicable positional, projection and clear height requirements under minor works item 2.43 in Schedule 1 of the Building (Minor Works) Regulation; and</p> <p>(n) metal supporting frames for growing of plants projecting not more than 300 mm from the external walls within lot boundary.</p> <p>9. A minimum clear width of 1.1 m is required for hoardings / covered walkways sited on a carriageway. As regards hoardings / covered walkways on a footpath, the clear width should be related to the existing pavement width as follows:-</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Existing Pavement Width</th> <th>Clear Width in Walkway</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>2.5 m or less</td> <td>Normally 1.5 m minimum. Exemption may be considered if the pavement is of insufficient width</td> </tr> <tr> <td>over 2.5 m to 3 m</td> <td>Width of the pavement minus 0.8 m subject to a maximum of 2m</td> </tr> <tr> <td>over 3 m</td> <td>2 m</td> </tr> </tbody> </table> <p>The required clear width must not be obstructed in any manner e.g. by traffic signs, scaffold poles, supports for formwork or the like. The vertical clearance inside the covered walkway should be 2.3 m minimum.</p>	Existing Pavement Width	Clear Width in Walkway	2.5 m or less	Normally 1.5 m minimum. Exemption may be considered if the pavement is of insufficient width	over 2.5 m to 3 m	Width of the pavement minus 0.8 m subject to a maximum of 2m	over 3 m
Existing Pavement Width	Clear Width in Walkway									
2.5 m or less	Normally 1.5 m minimum. Exemption may be considered if the pavement is of insufficient width									
over 2.5 m to 3 m	Width of the pavement minus 0.8 m subject to a maximum of 2m									
over 3 m	2 m									

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
2000	Practice Note for Authorized Persons, Registered Structural Engineers and Registered Geotechnical Engineers	APP-29 Lift and Escalator Installations	<p>Appendix B (PNAP APP-29) Amendments to the Code of Practice for Building Works for Lifts and Escalators 2011 (September 2019)</p> <p>4. Paragraph 3.8 An access door leading to a stair in accordance with paragraph 3.12.4 shall be provided to <i>the pit if the pit depth exceeds 2m. It shall be imperforate and shall not open towards the interior of the liftwell. It shall be provided with a key-operated lock, capable of being reclosed or relocked without a key, and opened from inside of the liftwell without a key even when locked. Where the pit depth exceeds 1.6m but not more than 2m, such access door shall also be provided if the layout of the building so permits.</i></p> <p>8. Paragraph 3.12.2 Access for persons to and egress from machine or pulley rooms shall be (a) the ladder shall be permanently fixed; and (b) adjacent to the top end of the ladder, there shall be a platform with railings and one or more hand holds within easy reach.</p>	
		APP-42 Amenity Features	<p>Outdoor Prefabricated Structures</p> <p>38. <i>An outdoor prefabricated structure, other than a radio base station which does not exceed 3m³ in volume and 2m in height, is not regarded as a building. Nevertheless, the erection of such structure should not affect the structural safety and drainage system of its parent building.</i> Any outdoor prefabricated structure exceeding the above size limit is regarded as a building which will be subject to the control of the BO including, inter alia, the requirement for prior approval of plans and consent to the commencement of works and the requirement for an occupation permit before they can be occupied.</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
2000	Practice Note for Authorized Persons, Registered Structural Engineers and Registered Geotechnical Engineers	APP-42 Amenity Features	<p>Horizontal Screens and Trellis</p> <p>20. In open areas frequently used by occupants at ground floors or podium floors; or roof gardens/play areas at podium floor around the perimeter of a domestic tower, horizontal screens may be permitted to provide protection against inclement weather and falling objects subject to the following conditions:</p> <p>(a) the horizontal screens will not materially affect the lighting and ventilation of the areas or nearby buildings;</p> <p>(b) the areas are designated as common parts in the DMC or falling within the definition of "common parts" under the BMO, and</p> <p>(c) the areas do not form part of any ommercial premises</p> <p>21. In assessing the acceptability of the width of the horizontal screens, the BA will take into consideration the population using the facility, the size of the development and the design of the screens. In any case, the width of such screens allowed to be exempted from GFA calculation should not exceed 2 m.</p> <p>22. The erection of trellis for growing of plants at garden area and on roof, including main roof and set-back roof, may be permitted and the area of trellis may be exempted from GFA calculation subject to the following conditions:</p> <p>(a) for roofs and gardens designated for private use, the maximum total area of the trellis is not more than 5% of the roof/garden area where it is situated or 20m² , whichever is the less;</p> <p>(b) for roofs and gardens designated as common parts in the DMC or falling within the definition of "common parts" under the BMO, the maximum total area of the trellis is not more than 5% of the roof area and not more than 10% of the garden area where such roof/garden is situated. However, the maximum size of each trellis should not exceed 20m² ;</p>	

DATA	Related Requisitions		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
2000	Practice Note for Authorized Persons, Registered Structural Engineers and Registered Geotechnical Engineers	APP-42 Amenity Features	(c) the trellis should be an open-sided structure with a height of not more than the storey height of the floor where the trellis is situated. For trellis situated on the roof, the height of the trellis should not be more than the storey height of the floor below. The horizontal supports or intermediate bars should not be nearer than 200mm from one another; (d) the trellis should not obstruct any required prescribed windows/open air for offices, rooms for habitation, kitchen, lavatory, bathroom, etc. of any building. For the avoidance of doubt, no trellis should be located on a refuge roof. The commentary to Clause B18.3 of the Code of Practice for Fire Safety in Buildings 2011 refers; and (e) compliance with the requirements from other departments including the Lands Department and Planning Department.	
		APP-100 Structural Plans of Glass Reinforced Polyester (GRP) Water Tanks	Small GRP Water Tank 7. <i>For GRP water tanks with a volume capacity and the water head not exceeding 9m³ and 2m respectively, requirements described in paragraphs 3 to 5 above</i> would normally not be required. However, the following particulars should be included in the structural plans submitted for approval : (a) Location, principal dimensions, capacity and weight of the water tank; (b) Reference to design standards and material specification of the tank; and (c) Fixing arrangements and details, with calculations substantiating the structural adequacy of the tank supports. 8. For indoor GRP water tanks with a volume capacity and water head not exceeding 4m ³ and 1.2m respectively, only item (a) in paragraph 7 above needs to be included in the structural plans submitted for approval together with calculations substantiating the structural adequacy of the floor structure supporting the water tank.	

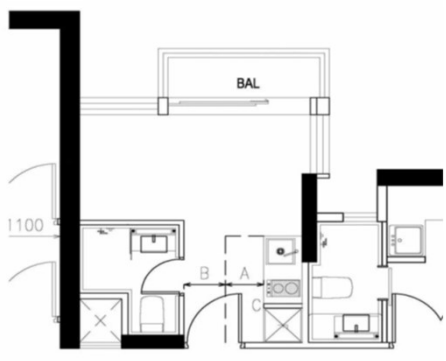
DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
2000	Practice Note for Authorized Persons, Registered Structural Engineers and Registered Geotechnical Engineers	APP-126 Erection of Signboards	<p>Appendix E (PNAP APP-126) Highways Department's Requirements for Signboards</p> <p>1. Signboards and its associated supports and guy wires shall not be fixed to or cause obstruction to street lighting, traffic signs/signals, highway structures, trees, street furniture etc. and shall not obstruct the operation and maintenance work of the same. In case of doubt, the Highways Department must be consulted.</p> <p>2. No signboard shall be erected above expressway and trunk roads. A minimum clearance of 2m to highway structures and 3m to street lighting should be maintained in order to avoid obstruction to maintenance access.</p> <p>3. In order not to affect the illumination of the street lights, any proposed signboard should not encroach into the space bounded by the main beams from the lantern of an adjacent street light which are about 72o from the vertical, i.e. an angle of cone of 144o . The AP is required to carry out a site visit/survey to ascertain the as-surveyed location of any lamp post which is required for verification of vertical clearance provided and its compliance with the above requirement.</p>	
		APP-130 Lighting and Ventilation Requirements – Performance-based Approach	<p>Diagram E : Measurement of UVA for a room requiring more than one window</p> <p>area of W1 \geq 10% of area 'A1' area of W2 \geq 10% of area 'A2' UVA1 and UVA2 \geq Respective minimum UVA requirement in Table 1 & Table 2 under para. 3.5 below h = Height of facade</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
2000	Practice Note for Authorized Persons, Registered Structural Engineers and Registered Geotechnical Engineers		3.4 No window in the building shall, for the purpose of paragraph 3.1 above, be counted for the calculation of UVA unless- (a) it faces into a space which is uncovered and not bounded on the side opposite the window by any obstruction of the building; (b) the top of the window is at least 2m above the floor level; and (c) the superficial area of glass in the window or the aggregate superficial area of glass in the windows (calculated from width of effective window glazing pane), as the case may be, shall not be less than 10% of the floor area of the room in which the window or windows are located.	
	2/2015 APSEC Discussion Forum on 20 March 2015	<u>Questions</u>	Pipe Ducts and Essential E&M Ducts Located at Staircase According to PNAP APP-93, pipe ducts shall be accessible from the common parts of the building. An unobstructed working space of not less than 700mm in front of the pipes shall be provided for aintenance and repair of the pipeworks. The doors or panels providing access to the pipe ducts shall not be less than 600mm wide by 2000mm high. There are precedents that pipe ducts located at the staircase can be exempted from GFA calculations, given that they fulfill the above mentioned requirements. However, there are recent cases rejected that the access panels or doors should be opened at landings, and the same also apply to other essential E&M ducts. Please clarify if access panels for pipe ducts could be opened at staircases and exempted from GFA calculations if the requirements of PNAP APP-93 are complied with and also for access panels for essential E&M ducts to be opened at staircase if maintenance works could technically be conducted via these access panels (as per the sketch below).	
		<u>BD clarified</u>	The BD advised that pipe ducts for building services complying with Code of Practice for Fire Safety in Building 2011 (FS Code) Clause C9.3(d) but requiring maintenance and repair should not be provided in such location that would rely on access from a flight of stairs.	

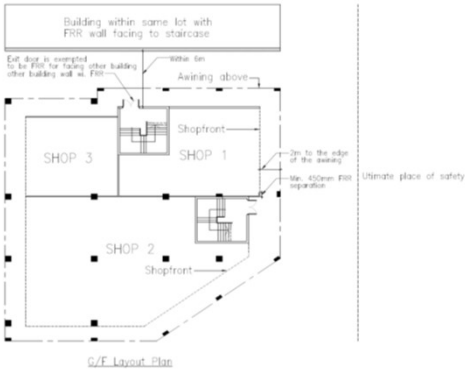
DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
2000	4/2020 APSEC Discussion Forum on 26 November 2020	<u>Questions</u>	<p>Refuge Floors Clause B18.2(b) and Clause B18.2(e) of FS Code 2011 states that "The net area for refuge should be not less than 50% of the total gross floor area of the refuge floor and should have a clear headroom of not less than 2300mm" and "The area for refuge should be open-sided above safe parapet height on at least two opposite sides to provide adequate cross ventilation;..." We opine that: 1. The 2300mm clear headroom requirement is not applicable for E/M services (drenchers, lightings, speakers, etc.) and signage (exit signs, exit directional signs, etc.), provided that a clear height of 2000mm should be maintained; 2. There is no requirement on the top level of the "open-sided above safe parapet height" Please advise if our interpretation is correct.</p>	
		<u>BD clarified</u>	<p>BD advised the area for refuge should have a clear headroom of not less than 2300mm pursuant to Clause B18.2(b) of FS code 2011. While there were no specific requirements on the "open-sided above safe parapet height" stipulated in Clause B18.2(e) of FS Code 2011, adequate cross ventilation should be provided.</p>	
	2/2015 APSEC Discussion Forum on 20 March 2015	<u>Questions</u>	<p>Vertical Green Wall Next to MOE A comment from BS states that it is not allowed to have a vertical green wall located next to the exit route because the green wall does not have specified fire resistance rating. herefore, if the MOE staircase is attached to the vertical green wall, the space along the stairs with a height of 2m should be clear and without the vertical green wall system (see diagram below). As there are many precedent cases of having planters next to exit routes, we suggest that a vertical green wall can be located next to an open staircase provided that there is a reasonable clearance, say 300mm, of the vertical green wall from the required discharge width of the staircase.</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
2000	4/2015 APSEC Discussion Forum on 28 August 2015	<u>BD clarified</u>	The BD responded that the proposal to allow a horizontal clearance between the surface of the vertical green wall to the edge of the minimum escape width was acceptable. However, the minimum clearance should be determined on a case-by-case basis as it would depend on the types of the plants and the information provided by the AP.	
		<u>Questions</u>	<p>Horizontal Screens under PNAP APP-42</p> <p>Under the practice notes, <i>GFA exemption for the area covered by the horizontal screen (for purpose of providing protection against inclement weather and falling object) is limited to 2m wide . If the roof of the horizontal screen is provided with greeneries, the exempted area needs not be included in the 10% cap. For cases where the horizontal screen is opened to one side, 2m wide for weather protection is reasonable</i> , though not very adequate. However when the horizontal screen must be opened to 2 sides (for example in cases where the towers are not physically connected to each other and a covered passage is intended to provide weather protection for the residents connecting these towers), <i>2m width is not adequate at all. We suggest BD to consider allowing different width for exemption under different circumstances, for e.g. to allow the exempted width to be 50% more (3m) if the pedestrian connection cannot be attached to the building's perimeter and must be opened 2 sides. Otherwise, only 2m protection will be provided to developments and the weather protection performance against inclement weather will be very limited.</i></p>	
		<p>HORIZONTAL SCREEN ATTACHED TO BUILDINGS</p> <p>HORIZONTAL SCREEN BETWEEN BUILDINGS</p>		

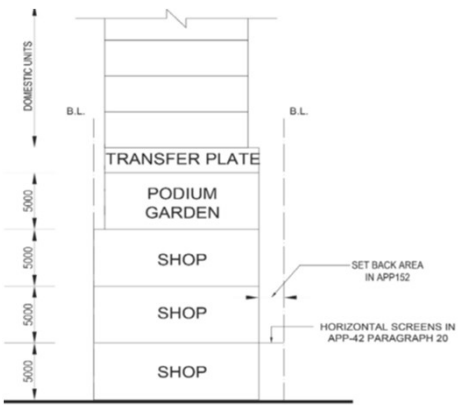
DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
2000	4/2015 APSEC Discussion Forum on 28 August 2015	<u>BD clarified</u>	The BD advised that horizontal screens should include covered walkways and considered that the effectiveness on weather protection partly depended on the height of the horizontal screen. In addition, according to paragraph 21 of PNAP APP-42, the <i>BD would take into consideration the population using the facility, the size of the development and design of the screen. However, to cater for an ageing community sooner or later, there might be a need to review the extant GFA exemption for 2m wide horizontal screen.</i> AAP would further study and provide proposals which would take into account the spatial requirements for wheelchair users.	
	5/2015 APSEC Discussion Forum on 13 November 2015	<u>Questions</u>	GFA Calculation for False Ceiling Works to Height Headroom Area For high headroom area without double count of GFA in the approved plan, please clarify false ceiling work (not serving as storage function above ceiling void) to such area shall not require to compensate in <i>GFA for the false ceiling void created higher than 2m.</i>	
		<u>BD clarified</u>	False ceiling not designed to take loading would not be accountable for GFA calculation even in situation with high headroom between the false ceiling and the underside of the structural slab.	
	1/2016 APSEC Discussion Forum on 15 January 2016	<u>Questions</u>	Canopies SC / PR According to PNAP APP-19 para. 3(j), <i>canopies projecting not more than 2m over an entrance to a building need not be counted for SC/PR calculation.</i> Further to the discussion at APSEC forum on 9 Jan 2015, "For architectural features with projections exceeding 500mm, only the exceeding portion should be included in the GFA calculations." <i>Under the same token, can canopies projecting more than 2m over an entrance be accountable in SC/PR ONLY for the exceeding portion too?</i> We understand that the term "building" in the said para. 3(j) is meant to include single family house as well. Please confirm our nderstanding is correct.	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
2000		<u>BD clarified</u>	<p>Provided that <i>the size of the canopy was commensurate with the use and scale of the building/premises, only the portion exceeding 2m would be accountable for SC/PR calculations</i>. In general, the clarification in para.3(j) is applicable to single family houses but the design should be reasonable and will not tempt owners to abuse.</p>	
	1/2016 APSEC Discussion Forum on 15 January 2016	<u>Questions</u>	<p>Open Kitchen We observed that BD has recently considered the arrangement where open kitchen countertop is parallel to the route towards unit's entrance door is not acceptable when the space between the countertop and the wall is like a corridor. We also understand that the idea of 'notional kitchen area' was brought up in discussions with BS. We hope the following guidelines to facilitate the design and submission can be provided: Notional Kitchen Area Notional kitchen area – what is the acceptable minimum dimension for such notional kitchen area? (A) Minimum remaining width from A to wall? (B) When sufficient space is provided, will the 600mm wall be still required? (C)</p>  <p>A = NOTIONAL KITCHEN (SPACE IN FRONT OF COUNTER TOP) C: WILL THE 600MM WALL STILL BE REQUIRED?</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
2000	1/2016 APSEC Discussion Forum on 15 January 2016	BD clarified	<p>1. BD explained that the current requirements in the FS Code for open kitchens, namely wall by the stove, sprinkler, smoke detector alarms, management undertaking, etc. were all derived from the experience gained in the many FS assessment (Fire Engineering) reports for open kitchen designs.</p> <p>2. The purpose of the "wall" mentioned in Clause C13.4(d) of the current FS Code was to shield the evacuees from radiant heat of stove fires, allowing the necessary pause of evacuees to open the door (and gate) without being seriously charred. <i>This wall would be essential unless the stove was placed sufficiently far from the exit. From the advice of the Technical Committee on the various open kitchen layouts presented and an expert's advice on the effect of radiant heat flux to the evacuees at the exit door, the minimum distance for a sprinkler controlled household stove fire without shielding by walls should be 2m measured from the nearest corner of the stove to the door knob when the exit door was in closed position.</i></p>	
			<p>3. The following two phenomena recently found in some open kitchen designs had posed threat to fire safety and undermined the relevant standards as stipulated in the Code:</p> <p>a) <i>The "wall" though provided but at locations not performing the intended shielding function for the exit and the stove was less than 2m from the exit door (considered not meeting code-compliant equivalent standard)</i>, and</p> <p>b) The design of open kitchens in small studio flats which a very congested environment would be expected (considered in such case the stove could be very near to main circulation routes or storage of combustibles, irrespective of (i) whether the wall was performing the intended shielding effect for the exit and (ii) location of the stove was more or less than 2m from the exit or not, therefore a highly undesirable scenario not specifically addressed by the Code).</p> <p>4. The demarcation of notional kitchen area as proposed in the meeting might help but would not significantly reduce the risks mentioned in para. 3.</p> <p>5. Scenario 3(a) would be regarded as a contravention. New proposals would not be accepted. If such design was nsisted ,additional compensatory measures on top of the current code requirements might be necessary for consideration on case basis, and by the Fire Safety Committee (FSC) if necessary.</p>	

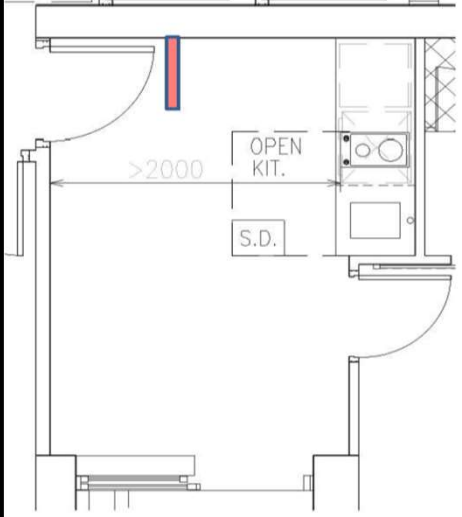
DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
2000	1/2016 APSEC Discussion Forum on 15 January 2016		<p>6. Scenario 3(b) with the provision of effective shield wall or sufficient distance between door and stove could be regarded as code-compliant but undesirable. APs were advised to consider on a voluntary basis a choice of safer stove or other compensatory measures for such flats.</p> <p>7. BD invited members to view from the internet how the intervention of water could aggravate a fire involving cooking oil to appreciate the fire risk involved under sprinkler control.</p>	
	3/2016 APSEC Discussion Forum on 27 May 2016	<u>Questions</u>	<p>Code of Practice for Fire Safety in Buildings 2011 (FS Code)</p> <p>a. FS Code Clause B5.7 - 450mm Return for Exit Route When the required staircase discharge to G/F level with other accommodation of building on the same plane, please clarify only min. 450mm return of FRR enclosing wall is required as per clause B5.7 even there is a 2m wide covered walkway/canopy/awning over the area right outside the exit door of the required staircase provided that the ultimate place of safety is immediately next to the covered walkway/canopy/awning.</p> <p>b. FS Code Clause C9.7 - 6m Separation When G/F exit of required staircase facing to and within 6m of other building within the same site, please advise if G/F FRR door of required staircase could be exempted from Clause C9.7 provided that there is FRR wall by other building within 6m from the discharge point of the required staircase.</p> 	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
2000	3/2016 APSEC Discussion Forum on 27 May 2016	<u>BD clarified</u>	<p>a. If a required staircase passed through a covered area before reaching the ultimate place of safety, apart from complying with Clause B5.7 of the FS Code, the covered area should be designated as common parts, open in design (not trapping smoke) and not ncumbered with fire hazards. Besides, the construction of the covered walkway and canopy/awning should meet the requirements stipulated in Clause C4.3 and Clause C12.1 of the FS Code respectively. Awning used for covered walkways should also be non- ombustible satisfying Part E of the FS Code.</p> <p>b. Clause C9.7 (d) would be applicable and a fire-rated door would be required to protect the discharge point at ground storey. Diagram C2 Example (a) was relevant.</p> <p>c. Compliance with Subsections B7 and B8 and Table B2 of the FS Code should be checked on room, storey as well as compartment basis.</p> <p>d. The understanding on the part of the covered walkway was correct provided that the exit route at the temporary place of safety comply with Subsection C9 and Clause C12.4. The floor of the temporary place of safety should also have an FRR of not less than that of the storey below. Clause B5.3 and Diagram B1 were also relevant.</p>	
		<u>Questions</u>	<p>Protection of Public/Residents around Buildings</p> <p>(a) Canopies under para. 3(j) of PNAP APP-19</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
2000	3/2016 APSEC Discussion Forum on 27 May 2016		<p>According to para. 3(j) of PNAP APP-19, canopies within the site boundary projecting not more than 2m over the entrance to a building need not be counted for SC and plot ratio (P.R.). Please clarify if such a canopy may also be applied to a G/F retail shop, which is set back from the site boundary.</p> <p>(b) Horizontal Screen under para. 20 of PNAP APP-42According to para. 20 of PNAP APP-42, horizontal screens may be permitted in any open areas frequently used by occupants at ground floor or podium floor; or roof garden/ play areas at podium floor around the perimeter of a domestic tower (apparently within site boundary). As it does not specify the use of the building at G/F, so we understand that the use as shop at G/F warrants permission to have such horizontal screen installed. However, in the Chinese version, it is stated that “在位於住用樓宇的地面層及平台樓層經常被使用的露天地方或位於天台花園/平台塔樓周邊的遊戲場地……”</p> <p>Hence, it apparently qualifies that the open areas at ground floor or podium floor should only be applied to domestic buildings. The discrepancy is noted, when compared with the English Version. Please clarify which one we should follow. (c) Set back requirement under PNAP APP-152</p>  <p>According to para.8(a) of PNAP APP152, a canopy that complies with Reg.10 of the B(P)R may be permitted. Please clarify whether horizontal screens as mentioned in PNAP APP 42 para.20 should also be allowed in these set-back areas.</p>	

DATA	Related Requisitions		Descriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
2000	3/2016 APSEC Discussion Forum on 27 May 2016	<u>BD clarified</u>	<p>(a) Para. 6 of PNAP APP-19 described <i>the principle that areas covered by projecting features forming shelters capable of functional use should be included in GFA calculations even the concerned width to clear height ratio was not less than 1:8. Only canopies within site projecting not more than 2m over an entrance of a building could be disregarded from SC and GFA calculations</i>. Canopies over the shopfront or the entrance of a retail shop should be included in SC and GFA calculations. <i>However, special circumstances demonstrating public interest or innovative designs which were unlikely to be abused could always be favourably considered on case merits.</i></p> <p>(b) In general, roofs of covered walkways connecting domestic buildings would be regarded as horizontal screens. Only horizontal screen serving a genuine protection to the passageway for the enjoyment of the residents of domestic buildings at the open areas at ground floor or podium floor <i>not forming part of any commercial premises could be disregarded from GFA calculation.</i></p> <p>(c) Para. 8 of PNAP APP-152 specified that the setback area should be without any permanent building structures other than landscaped <i>features, perforated balustrades, perforated boundary walls and structural columns. Minor projecting features and signboard projecting not more than 600mm from the external walls and at a clear height of not less than 2.5m above the street level; and single storey footbridges across the setback area might also be permitted</i>. In this connection, a horizontal screen that could meet the above requirements might be permitted within the building setback area under PNAP APP-152.</p>	
	4/2016 APSEC Discussion Forum on 12 August 2016	<u>Questions</u>	<p>Horizontal Screen under PNAP APP-42 We wish to know the progress of BD's review on the allowable width of horizontal screen and associated changes to PNAP APP-42 (changing the name from horizontal screen to covered walkway etc.) following discussion under Forums 4/2015 item 11 and 5/2015 item 14.</p>	

DATA	Related Requisitions		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
2000	4/2016 APSEC Discussion Forum on 12 August 2016	BD clarified	The proposal had been relayed to the consultant for the review of the B(P)Rs for consideration and incorporation the draft recommendations as appropriate. In the meantime, Form BA 16 on application for covered walkway of more than 2m wide would be considered on case basis. The size of population served thus the traffic load of the route and the chance of abusive use would be taken into account.	
	2/2017 APSEC Discussion Forum on 17 March 2017	Questions	<p>Ultrasonic Crosshole Logging Tests for Large Diameter Bored Piles</p> <p>BD recently imposes mandatory requirement "Ultrasonic Crosshole Logging Tests for Large Diameter Bored Piles" in the appendix of approval letter as below:-</p> <p><small>(e) Ultrasonic Crosshole Sonic Logging test – Test to verify the homogeneity and integrity of concrete should be carried out for the entire length of each pile in accordance with ASTM D6760-08 or ASTM D6760-14 by a laboratory* accredited under the HOKLAS.</small></p> <p>As per BD's requirements, Sonic Logging shall be carried out in accordance with ASTM D6760-08 or ASTM D6760-14. It is noted that ASTM D6760-08 is superseded by D6760-14. Please clarify which standard should be followed as their requirements are different.</p> <p>According to the new requirement, the min. no. of sonic tubes shall be set as every 0.25 to 0.3 m of the bored piles diameters. For 3.0 m dia. bored piles, the nos. of sonic tubes will be 9. Registered Specialist Contractor (Foundation) advised that this requirement is impractical and will induce great impact on the construction programme. Would BD please review this requirement before further implementation.</p>	
		BD clarified	BD advised that upon further review they would revise the imposed conditions for Ultrasonic Crosshole Sonic Logging Test as follows:- (a) the min. number of sonic tube would be 4 for bored piles with diameter less than 2m; and (b) the min. number of sonic tube would be 6 for bored piles with diameter of 2m or above. The sonic test requirements would not be imposed for amendment plans which 1st approval had been obtained before November 2016.	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
2000	3 /2017 APSEC Discussion Forum on 19 May 2017	<u>Questions</u>	<p>Clause C13.3 of FS Code – Kitchen in Use Classification 1 (Item raised by AAP)</p> <p><i>As pointed out in item 7 of 1/2016 ADF, the minimum distance for a sprinkler controlled household stove fire without shielding by walls should be 2m measured from the nearest corner of the stove to the door knob when the exit door was in closed position. In this connection, we have the following 2 queries regarding the diagram attached below</i></p>  <p>(1) <i>Is the fire rated wall (highlighted in red) required if the cooking appliance is more than 2m away from the flat entrance. (Note: this is a one-bed room flat.)</i></p> <p>(2) <i>Is gas stove allowed if it is more than 2m away from the entrance without the fire rated wall.</i></p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
2000	3 /2017 APSEC Discussion Forum on 19 May 2017	<u>BD clarified</u>	<p>According to the FS Code 2011, if a fire barrier was not provided in accordance with Clause C13.3, for kitchens adjacent to the sole exit of a unit, a full height wall having an FRR not less than -/30/30 and not less than 600mm wide should be provided adjacent to the flat exit door together with the FSIs according to Clause C13.4. As discussed in item 7 of 1/2016 ADF, where stoves were already provided at location near to exits where screen walls could not be effective to protect the occupants at the entrance or the risk of open flame being likely to injure users of narrow passages, improvements measures should be considered such as the use of stove with extra safety provisions. From the sketch, the studio flat itself resembled a kitchen of a medium size flat. The “adjacent” meaning is obviously applicable thus requiring the screen wall. Furthermore, the screen wall as shown could obviously serve to a certain extent the screening effect, though not entirely satisfactory. After occupation, the room would likely be very congested with furniture items cornering users close to the stove before reaching exits. The screen wall should be indispensable in this scenario.</p> <p>Generally speaking, in considering whether screen walls would be required for open kitchens in such small studio flats, BD would pragmatically consider the layout of the flat, e.g. in L-shaped flats where the stove was located on the screened side from the entrance a layout already serving the screening function for the stove, such walls might not be necessary. On the other hand, in some apparently code-compliant layouts such as the proposed one, since the room was very small and the screen wall could only shadow a part of the exit door, the AP should consider enhancement measures such as safer stoves, on top of the screen wall.</p>	

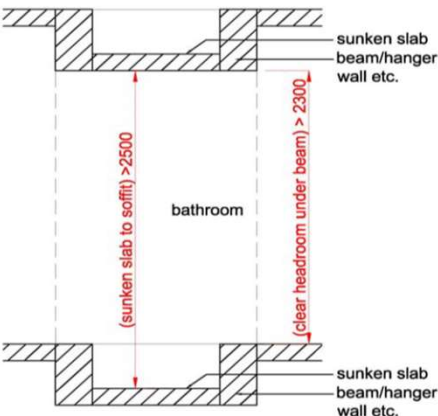
DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
2000	4 /2017 APSEC Discussion Forum on 11 August 2017	Questions	5/2014 Q14 Follow-up – Wider Corridor GFA Exemption with TRS Based on reply on Q14 of 5/2014 and JPN1 • Lobby without TRS – width between 1.65m and 2.5m can be GFA exempted (just follow JPN1) • Lobby with TRS – Width of Lobby LESS MOE Route Width LESS TRS Width can be GFA exempted, provided lobby width not more than 2.5m (follow Forum) when conditions under the JPN1 can be followed. We wish to know whether the same principle applies for wider corridor: • Corridor without TRS – width between 1.2m to 2.2m can be exempted • Corridor with TRS – Width of Corridor LESS TRS Width LESS MOE Route Width can be exempted, provided corridor width not more than 2.2m.	
		BD clarified	BD advised that the interpretation was agreeable and confirmed that the following would be GFA accountable: • The 1.5m x 1.5m required wheelchair manoeuvring space in corridors. • When a required TRS of 0.75m wide along the corridor also served as MOE route, 1.8m (1.05+0.75m) min total width of the part of the corridor. BD further affirmed that TRS could overlap with BFA wheelchair manoeuvring space but not the 1.05m exit route.	
	1/2020 APSEC Discussion Forum on 10 January 2020	Questions	PNAP APP-23 Clear Width in Covered Walkway According to paragraph 9 of PNAP APP-23 and Clause 3.2.2 of Code of Practice for Demolition of Buildings 2004 , we understand the width of the covered walkway relates to the width of existing pavement and the minimum clear width of covered walkway on existing pavement over 3m wide is 2m . It is presumed the prescriptive requirements were agreed among government departments. In a recent case, covered walkway with 2m internal clear width was rejected and AP was required to provide pedestrian flow assessment and demonstrate any adverse effect to the pedestrian circulation pattern due to the footings of the covered walkway, The width of the covered walkway was eventually increased to >2m and of cantilever design . We see there is chance that the hoarding permit may be rejected even though the hoarding design conformed to prescriptive requirements and additional traffic assessment may be required as considered necessary by relevant authorities. We hope BD will consider updating the relevant practice notes to reflect the situation so that takeholders could be aware and allow sufficient time for extra preparation work/traffic studies beforehand in order to secure timely issuance of hoarding permit.	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
2000	1/2020 APSEC Discussion Forum on 10 January 2020	BD clarified	BD noted that this was an individual case where Transport Department required pedestrian flow assessment. BD would liaise with Transport Department and revert in due course.	
2300	Building (Planning) Regulations (Cap. 123 sub. leg. F)	2. Interpretation	<p>detached building (獨立建築物) means any building which is not connected to any other building and has a clear and unobstructed open space—</p> <p>(a) <i>extending the entire depth of the building of not less than 2.3 m measured at right angles to the external surface of the building; (L.N. 294 of 1976)</i></p> <p>(b) <i>in the rear of the building of a depth of 2.3 m measured at right angles to the external surface of the building and extending for the full width of the site; (L.N. 294 of 1976)</i></p>	
		24. Height of storeys	<p>semi-detached building (半獨立建築物) means any one of a pair of buildings connected to each other by a party wall and has a clear and unobstructed open space—</p> <p>(a) <i>extending the entire depth of the building of not less than 2.3 m measured at right angles to the external surface of the building; (L.N. 294 of 1976)</i></p> <p>(b) <i>in the rear of the building of a depth of 2.3 m measured at right angles to the external surface of the building and extending for the full width of the site; (L.N. 294 of 1976)</i></p> <p>(1) Every room used or intended to be used for the purpose of an office or for habitation in any building shall have a height of not less than 2.5 m measured from floor to ceiling: (L.N. 406 of 1987) Provided that there shall be not less than 2.3 m measured from the floor to the underside of any beam.</p> <p>(2) In any such room having a sloping ceiling, the height shall be measured to the mean height of such ceiling above floor level: Provided that no portion of any room shall have a height of less than 2 m.</p> <p>(3) (Repealed L.N. 406 of 1987) (L.N. 294 of 1976)</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
2300	Building (Planning) Regulations (Cap. 123 sub. leg. F)	31. Minimum requirements of window	<p>(1) No prescribed window shall, for the purposes of regulation 30, be deemed to face into the external air unless—</p> <p>(a) it faces into a street which is not less than 4.5 m wide; or</p> <p>(b) it faces into a space uncovered and unobstructed above the area delineated by the rectangular horizontal plane; and</p> <p>(c) it is so placed that, if another rectangular plane, the base whereof is equal to and common with the base of the rectangular horizontal plane, is inclined, above the rectangular horizontal plane, at an angle of 71 1/2° from the horizontal where the window is in a room used for habitation or 76° from the horizontal where the window is in a room used for the purposes of an office or as a kitchen, no part of the building, or of any other building within the site on which such building is erected, protrudes above such plane; or (G.N.A. 97 of 1962)</p> <p>(d) where such window opens on to an area bounded on the side opposite the window by a boundary of the site on which the building is erected, such window is so placed that, if the rectangular horizontal plane is projected to such boundary and, from the position at which it first intersects the boundary, another rectangular plane, the base whereof is parallel and level with the sill of the window and has a length equal to the length of the base of the rectangular horizontal plane, is projected, towards the site and above the rectangular horizontal plane, at an angle of 80 1/2° from the horizontal where the window is in a room used for habitation or 83° where the window is in a room used for the purposes of an office or as a kitchen, no part of the building, or of any other building within such site, protrudes above such inclined plane: (G.N.A. 97 of 1962) Provided that, where there is a service lane or street less than 4.5 m wide adjacent to and parallel with such boundary, the boundary shall, for the purposes of this subparagraph be deemed to be at a position 1.5 m beyond such boundary. (L.N. 54 of 1969)</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
2300	Building (Planning) Regulations (Cap. 123 sub. leg. F)	31. Minimum requirements of window	<p>(2) The rectangular horizontal plane shall be such that—</p> <p>(a) it has an area of not less than 21 m²; and (b) <i>the minimum length of the base is not less than 2.3 m; and</i></p> <p>(c) the minimum length of the sides at right angles to the base, between the wall in which the window is sited and any other wall or building opposite thereto within the boundary of the site on which the building is erected, is not less than 4.5 m; or</p> <p>(d) <i>where the window opens on to an area bounded on the side opposite to the window by a boundary of the site on which the building is erected, the minimum length of the sides at right angles to the base, between the wall in which the window is sited and such boundary, is not less than 2.3 m;</i> or</p> <p>(e) where the window opens on to an area bounded on the side opposite to the window by a boundary of the site on which the building is erected and there is a service lane or street less than 4.5 m wide adjacent to and parallel with such boundary, the minimum length of the sides at right angles to the base, between the wall in which the window is sited and a line 1.5 m beyond such boundary or, where such service lane or street is less than 3 m wide, between the wall in which the window is sited and <i>a line drawn along the centre line of the service lane or street, is not less than 2.3 m</i> .</p> <p>(L.N. 54 of 1969; 17 of 2018 s. 53)</p> <p>(3) For the purposes of this regulation— (a) base (底邊), when used in relation to the rectangular horizontal plane, means that side of the rectangular horizontal plane common with the line of the sill of the window;rectangular horizontal plane (矩形水平面) means a rectangular plane at the level of the sill of the window having the minimum area and minimum dimensions prescribed by paragraph (2) (L.N. 307 of 1998);window (窗) includes french window; and (b) the sill of a prescribed window shall be deemed to be at a level 1 m above the level of the floor of the room for which the prescribed window is provided, whether or not the sill is at such level. (L.N. 54 of 1969)(G.N.A. 83 of 1959; L.N. 294 of 1976)</p>	

DATA	Related Requisitions		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
	2/2017 APSEC Discussion Forum on 17 March 2017	Questions	<p>Utility Platform (UP) for Housing Outdoor Units of ACs</p> <p>With the current generous provision of headroom for residential floors, whether it would be practical to require the priority location of AC to be on the upper part of UP and only when insufficient space is found should the residual still required space be provided on AC platforms. This would particularly help the situations in studio flats where frontage is usually meagre.</p>	
		BD clarified	<p>Member generally agreed that it was technically feasible to install A/C units at the soffits of UPs. However, for those cases with floor-to-floor height limited by OZP and/or lease conditions, only 2.3m clear headroom could be provided. In this connection, members were requested to provide more details of the A/C units and its installation for verification of the achievable clear headroom. In passing, members also opined that the A/C units could be installed at the soffits of balconies to allow greater flexibility. With a view to eliminate projecting AC platforms both on consideration on the reduction of building bulk and safety for maintenance, BD would adopt an accommodating stance in considering the headroom of balconies and UPs.</p>	
	4 /2017 APSEC Discussion Forum on 1 August 2017	Questions	<p>B(P)R 24(1) – Height of Storey <i>We wish BD to consider allowing modification to relax the height of storey under B(P)R 24(1) to be relaxed to 2.3m for toilets with sunken slab.</i></p>	
		BD clarified	<p>BD did not support the relaxation for reasons mentioned in item 3 above.</p>	
2300	4/2020 APSEC Discussion Forum on 26 November 2020	Questions	<p>Refuge Floors</p> <p>Clause B18.2(b) and Clause B18.2(e) of FS Code 2011 states that “The net area for refuge should be not less than 50% of the total gross floor area of the refuge floor and should have a clear headroom of not less than 2300mm” and “The area for refuge should be open-sided above safe parapet height on at least two opposite sides to provide adequate cross ventilation;...”</p> <p>We opine that:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> The 2300mm clear headroom requirement is not applicable for E/M services (drenchers, lightings, speakers, etc.) and signage (exit signs, exit directional signs, etc.), provided that a clear height of 2000mm should be maintained; There is no requirement on the top level of the “open-sided above safe parapet height” <p>Please advise if our interpretation is correct.</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
2300		<u>BD clarified</u>	BD advised <i>the area for refuge should have a clear headroom of not less than 2300mm pursuant to Clause B18.2(b) of FS code 2011. While there were no specific requirements on the "open-sided above safe parapet height" stipulated in Clause B18.2(e) of FS Code 2011, adequate cross ventilation should be provided.</i>	
	5/2019 APSEC Discussion Forum on 22 November 2019	<u>Questions</u>	<p>Height of Storeys As per item 3 of ADF 2/2014 held on 14.3.2014, BD advised that bathrooms and toilets were considered as habitable areas and thus had to comply with the storey height requirements under regulation 24 of Building (Planning) Regulations, i.e. the clear height should be 2.5m under structural ceiling soffit and 2.3m under beam. We would like to enquire whether the clear height from underside of beam/hanger wall of the sunken slab as marked in sketch below is acceptable.</p> 	
	5/2019 APSEC Discussion Forum on 22 November 2019	<u>BD clarified</u>	The requirement for a minimum clear height of 2.3m should only be applicable to the underside of beam pursuant to regulation 24(1) of Building (Planning) Regulations. For the scenario illustrated in HKIA's sketch, a clear height of not less than 2.5m from the floor to the ceiling should be provided to the underside of the hanger wall structure.	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
<p>2300</p>	<p>2/2020 APSEC Discussion Forum on 29 May 2020</p>	<p>Questions</p>	<p>Minimum Requirements of Window – B(P)R 31 According to B(P)R 31(3), the “rectangular horizontal plane” means a rectangular plane at the level of the sill of the window having the minimum area and minimum dimension prescribed by paragraph (2). Given that the requirements of rectangular horizontal plane as mentioned under B(P)R 31(2) and B(P)R 31(3) are already complied, is it allowed to have structure below this inclined plan as required under B(P)R 31(1)? Attached diagram refers:</p> <p>PRESCRIBED WINDOW DIAGRAM OF BLOCK B</p> <p>MINIMUM REQUIRED LENGTH OF RECTANGULAR INCLINED PLANE (FOR 1/F HABITABLE ROOM WINDOW FACING BLOCK A) = $\frac{[(57.90 + 1.40) - (11.10 + 1.00)]}{\tan 71.5^\circ}$ = 16.783m</p> <p>RECTANGULAR INCLINED PLANE: 15793</p> <p>RECTANGULAR HORIZONTAL PLANE: AREA: 2.3m x 9.2m = 21.16m² > 21.00m²(REQUIRED)</p> <p>TYPICAL FLOOR PLAN</p>	

DATA	Related Requisitions		Descriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
2300	2/2020 APSEC Discussion Forum on 29 May 2020	<u>BD clarified</u>	BD advised that the scenario is acceptable <i>provided that the space above the rectangular horizontal plane measuring 2.3m x 9.2m is uncovered and unobstructed and no part of any building protrudes above the inclined plane according to B(P)R 31(1)(b) & (c).</i>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
3000	Code of Practice for Fire Safety in Buildings 2011	Table B2: Minimum number and width of exit doors and exit routes from a room, fire compartment or storey	<p>Commentary <i>Floors containing more than 3000 people may be designed by fire engineering</i>. This is particularly relevant for large floor area buildings such as exhibition spaces, conference halls, sports facilities.</p>	
		Subsection B17 - Basements Clause B17.1	<p>Every basement should have not less than two exits, except a basement: (a) <i>the floor of which is not more than 3000mm below the level of the ground to which the exit serving such basement gives access</i> ; (b) the area of which does not exceed 150m²; and (c) which is used solely for a lavatory or plant room.</p>	
		Subsection B21 - Exit Requirements for Use Classification 5a	<p>Clause B21.4 Each tier or floor in a Use Classification 5a shall be constructed so that it does not have a gradient steeper than 35° to the horizontal and the headroom between any such floor or tier and the underside of the tier or <i>ceiling above it shall in every part be at least 3m</i>.</p>	
		Subsection B28 – Temporary Buildings	<p>Clause B28.2 Gangways not less than 1.2m in width intersecting the rows of seating should be provided in such a manner that no seat should be more than 3m from a gangway measured in the line of seating, and there should be a gangway abutting each side of the building from which the exit routes should open.</p>	
	5/2014 APSEC Discussion Forum on 10 November 2014	Questions	<p><i>MOE for Occupant Capacity Over 3000</i> FS Code 2011 Table B2 states that for occupant capacity over 3000, “the number of exit doors, exit routes and their width should be determined by the Building Authority”. <i>In the previous MOE Code, it is allowed to use “linear extrapolation” to determine the requirement for capacity over 3000. In contrast, the commentary in the new FS Code states that “floors containing more than 3000 people may be designed by fire engineering”. Please clarify if “linear extrapolation” is still acceptable, or if fire engineering approach is required for any population over 3000.</i></p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
3000	5/2014 APSEC Discussion Forum on 10 November 2014	BD clarified	<p>The BD advised that the MOE provisions for a floor with an occupant capacity exceeding 3,000 people without adopting a fire engineering design might be considered subject to :</p> <p>(a) the no. and width of exit doors and exit routes for the WHOLE floor should fulfill the minimum requirements derived from the linear extrapolation of such requirements from Table B2; and</p> <p>(b) the subject floor should be divided into compartments with an occupant capacity not exceeding 3,000 people such that each of them should fulfill the minimum requirements in Table B2 INDEPENDENTLY (i.e. without relying on exit doors / exit routes of other compartments).</p> <p>The BD highlighted that fire engineering approach might be required for a floor with an occupant capacity exceeding 3,000 people such as stadium, performance venue and exhibition hall.</p>	
	Practice Note for Authorized Persons, Registered Structural Engineers and Registered Geotechnical Engineers	APP-152 Sustainable Building Design Guidelines	Appendix C (PNAP APP-152)	<p>Legend:</p> <p>Fig. C3 Stepped building profile with communal podium garden as detailed in paragraph 7(b)</p>

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
3000	Practice Note for Authorized Persons, Registered Structural Engineers and Registered Geotechnical Engineers	APP-62 Protection of Sewage and Drainage Tunnel	<p>Site Formation or Foundation Works or Tunnel/Cavern Works</p> <p>8. Where site formation, foundation works or excavation for basements, shafts, tunnels, cavern and such like are proposed above or adjacent to sewage tunnels, the effects of such works shall be within the following limits :</p> <p>(a) The vertical or horizontal pressure on any sewage tunnel structure in soil due to the above operations (including filling and dewatering) and due to change of loads transmitted from foundations (including loads arising during construction) shall not be varied by more than 20kPa or by 5% of the total overburden pressure for structures at depths greater than 20m. For sewage tunnel structures in rock, where it is not possible to assess the change in ground pressure due to the above operations, the hydrostatic pressure shall not be increased or decreased by more than 50kPa;</p> <p>(b) Differential movement resulting from the works shall not produce a calculated final diametric distortion exceeding 0.1% of the shaft or sewage tunnel internal diameter and the calculated total movement in any plane shall not exceed 20mm;</p> <p>(c) The peak particle velocities at any sewage tunnel structures resulting from blasting (where permitted) or from driving or withdrawing of piles or any operation which can induce prolonged vibration shall not exceed 25mm/sec for blasting and 15mm/sec for other operations;</p> <p><i>(d) No holes or excavations shall be sunk or excavated within a distance of 3m from any point of any sewage tunnel structure without prior approval by the Building Authority for the works and the method to be employed;</i></p> <p><i>(e) No pile, foundation, well, soil nail, horizontal drain, or rock bolt/dowel shall be driven or constructed within a distance of 3m in any plane of any point of any sewage tunnel structure; and</i></p> <p><i>(f) Any part of a ground anchor shall be more than 3m from any part of any sewage tunnel structure.</i></p>	

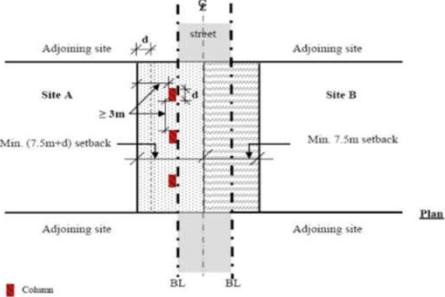
DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
3000	Practice Note for Authorized Persons, Registered Structural Engineers and Registered Geotechnical Engineers	APP-62 Protection of Sewage and Drainage Tunnel	<p>Ground Investigation Works</p> <p>10. Where ground investigations are proposed within Area No. 5 of the scheduled areas in Schedule 5, it is necessary for the following to be submitted to the Building Authority :</p> <p>(a) details of the exploration and locations of the proposed exploration holes, field testing or instrumentations relative to sewage tunnels;</p> <p>(b) proposed depth of holes, field testing or instrumentation;</p> <p>(c) a method statement for sinking holes, conducting field testing or installing instrumentation; and</p> <p>(d) a method statement for monitoring and checking the alignment and depth of holes when the minimum distance from a hole to any point of a sewage tunnel is less than 10m in any plan.</p> <p>11. Any proposal will also be judged against the following technical guidelines :</p> <p>(a) The vertical and horizontal pressure on any sewage tunnel structure in soil due to site investigation works including field testing such as plate load test, pressuremeter test, packer test or any operation should not be increased or decreased by more than 20kPa or by 5% of the total overburden pressure for structures at depths greater than 20m. For structures in rock, where it is not possible to assess the change in ground pressure due to the above operations, the hydrostatic pressure shall not be increased or decreased by 50kPa;</p> <p>(b) The peak particle velocities at any sewage tunnel structure resulting from :</p> <p>(i) artificial shocks generated either by the detonation of explosives or a mechanical blow at ground surface or at depth within a hole should not exceed 25mm/sec; and</p> <p>(ii) percussion drilling, hammer drilling or any operation which can induce prolonged vibration, should not exceed 15mm/sec; and</p> <p>(c) No holes should be sunk or excavated within a distance of 3m from any point of any sewage tunnel.</p>	

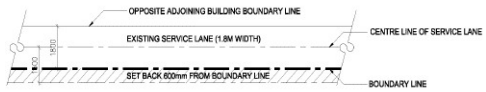
DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
3000	Practice Note for Authorized Persons, Registered Structural Engineers and Registered Geotechnical Engineers	APP-84 Access Facilities for Telecommunications and Broadcasting Services	<p>(APP-84)</p> <p>General Schematic Arrangement of Access Facilities</p> <p>2/F</p> <p>1/F</p> <p>G/F</p> <p>(TBE Room may be located on other floors so long as it is in an area not susceptible to flooding)</p> <p>LEAD-IN DUCTS</p> <p>Legend :</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> (T) Telephone socket (TV) TV socket ■ Distribution case — Concealed conduit (25mm dia typical for telephone, 32mm dia typical for TV) — Vertical riser/ horizontal trunking <p>Notes :</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The size of TBE Room should conform to Table in Appendix A. 2. The construction of TBE Room should comply with the Building (Construction) Regulations. 3. The Network Operator should seal all the lead-in ducts after laying the underground cables. 	
		APP-96 Registration of General Building Contractors and Specialist Contractors	<p>Works Which May be Carried out by More Than One Category of Contractors</p> <p>10. Additional guidelines on the demarcation of different scope of works among categories of contractors are as follows:</p> <p>(d) Foundation Works</p> <p><i>Diaphragm walls should be carried out by RSC(F) when the penetration depth exceeds 3m. The penetration depths of foundation elements are generally measured from the ground level which may be existing or newly formed. Spread footing and raft foundation works may be carried out by either RSC(F) or RGBC.</i></p> <p>(f) Retaining Structures</p> <p>Retaining structures involving diaphragm walls, bore-piles, caissons or other foundation works, excluding those mentioned in paragraph 10(a) above should be carried out by RSC(F). Appendix B of PNAP APP-18 stipulates that mini piles are not to take lateral loads and therefore not commonly used in site formation works. <i>Its construction could be up to 400mm diameter and should therefore be carried out by RSC(F) or if less than 3m deep, by RGBC but not RSC(SF).</i></p>	

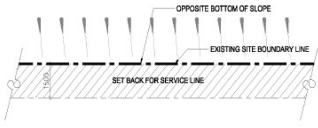
DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
	Practice Note for Authorized Persons, Registered Structural Engineers and Registered Geotechnical Engineers	APP-126 Erection of Signboards	<p>Signboard within site boundaries</p> <p>4. A signboard to be erected wholly within the site boundaries should comply with the applicable requirements in paragraph 3 above. In addition, a wall signboard or projecting signboard exceeding the requirements in Appendix B on dimensions or extent of projection are regarded as a building for the purpose of the BO and should comply with the relevant provisions of the BO applicable to a new building including the accountability for gross floor area (GFA) and site coverage (SC) calculations.</p> <p>5. <i>A signboard higher than 3m erected on ground or roof of a building should not create an enclosed or partially enclosed floor space unless such signboard together with the enclosed or partially enclosed floor space are included in the GFA and SC calculations or such floor space is occupied by machinery or ductwork.</i></p>	
		Appendix C (PNAP APP-126)	<p>10. A fireman's emergency switch of an approved type shall be provided if the signboard has been connected to an electricity supply. <i>The switch shall be situated in a conspicuous position, not more than 3m but not less than 2.5m from ground level. It shall either be as nearly as possible vertically below the signboard or near the main entrance to the building</i>, where appropriate. Notwithstanding this, it shall be positioned at a point out of reach of the general public. Where more than one fireman's emergency switch is installed on any one building, such switches shall be clearly marked to distinguish one from another.</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
3000	Practice Note for Authorized Persons, Registered Structural Engineers and Registered Geotechnical Engineers	Appendix E (PNAP APP-126) Highways Department's Requirements for Signboards	<p>1. Signboards and its associated supports and guy wires shall not be fixed to or cause obstruction to street lighting, traffic signs/signals, highway structures, trees, street furniture etc. and shall not obstruct the operation and maintenance work of the same. In case of doubt, the Highways Department must be consulted.</p> <p>2. No signboard shall be erected above expressway and trunk roads. A minimum clearance of 2m to highway structures and 3m to street lighting should be maintained in order to avoid obstruction to maintenance access .</p> <p>3. In order not to affect the illumination of the street lights, any proposed signboard should not encroach into the space bounded by the main beams from the lantern of an adjacent street light which are about 72o from the vertical, i.e. an angle of cone of 144o</p> <p>. The AP is required to carry out a site visit/survey to ascertain the as-surveyed location of any lamp post which is required for verification of vertical clearance provided and its compliance with the above requirement.</p>	
		APP-127 Contractor's Sheds	<p>General Advice on Contractor's Sheds</p> <p>8. For a contractor's shed sited over a hoarding or covered walkway, a permit will not be issued if the support of the shed is dependent on the structure of the hoarding/covered walkway or if any of its support obstructs the clear width of the hoarding/covered walkway.</p> <p>9. If a contractor's shed is constructed of combustible material, it should be located at least 3m from any other adjoining buildings or site boundary and such space should be kept clear.</p> <p>10. All contractor's sheds should be provided with adequate fire safety provisions in accordance with the requirements set out in Appendix B.</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
3000	Practice Note for Authorized Persons, Registered Structural Engineers and Registered Geotechnical Engineers	Appendix A (PNAP 273) (APP-127)	<p>Criteria for Contractor's Sheds that could be certified by RGBC/RSC</p> <p>a) The contractor's shed is of single storey with storey height less than 3m and with floor area less than 230 m2 ;</p> <p>b) The base of the contractor's shed from the ground level, if stilted above ground, does not exceed 1.5m;</p> <p>c) The proposed shed does not pose any geotechnical concern in that</p> <p>(i) The maximum gradient across the site for erection of shed is not more than 15°.</p> <p>(ii) The overall gradient of an area bounded by lines 10m outside the footprint of the shed in any direction is less than 15°.</p> <p>(iii) There is no slope within the area 10m outside the footprint of the shed steeper than 30° or higher than 1.5m.</p> <p>(iv) There is no retaining wall or terrace wall higher than 1.5 m either within the site for erection of shed or within the area 10m outside the footprint of the shed.</p> <p>d) The contractor's shed is not sited</p> <p>(i) on a cantilevered structure; or</p> <p>(ii) above a hoarding or covered walkway; and</p> <p>e) The contractor's shed is located within the boundaries of the building site and is not readily accessible to the general public.</p>	
	5/2016 APSEC Discussion Forum on 4 November 2016	<u>Questions</u>	<p>Exit routes discharge into a lane</p> <p>When a lane is not a deadend lane but a thoroughfare, there are 2 directions which people can discharge. Will BD allow the total width of MOE of proposed building discharging into the lane be doubled the width of the lane when it is a thoroughfare?</p> <p>(For example, a building with 4 nos. of 1500mm MOE stair can all discharge into a lane of 3m wide provided that the lane is a thoroughfare and its entire width is not less than 3m)</p>	
		<u>BD clarified</u>	<p>BD stressed that MOE must discharge to an Ultimate Place of Safety not less than 1.5m wide or with width of the total required width of exits discharging into the area, whichever the greater. In the case of MOE discharging to a lane, the width of the lane should not be less than the total width of MOE discharging onto that lane. As it would not be possible to predict the direction to which people would discharge after reaching the lane from the MOE stairs, assuming evacuees would escape orderly in two directions thus taking the total provided width was 2 times the width of the lane would not normally be accepted.</p> <p>Nevertheless, BD would consider justifications on individual cases e.g. phased evacuation of large developments in determining the minimum required width of lanes.</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
3000	4/2017 APSEC Discussion Forum on 11 August 2017	<u>Questions</u>	B(P)R 24(1) - <i>Height of Storey for bathroom For bathroom with sunken slab arrangement to accommodate drain pipes of the respective unit, it may be difficult to achieve 2.5m headroom (i.e. from structural floor to ceiling soffit of the sunken slab) where the floor-to-floor height would normally be in the order of 3m</i> or so, especially when the sunken slab has to accommodate the anti-siphonage pipe from S-trap toilet. Under such circumstances, would BD favorably consider application for modification to permit headroom of such bathroom to be reduced to 2.3m?	
		<u>BD clarified</u>	As the problem could be resolved by adjusting the storey heights within acceptable limits set by BD or alternative designs, BD would not pursue to relax the storey heights in bathrooms.	
	5/2019 APSEC Discussion Forum on 22 November 2019	<u>Questions</u>	<p>PNAP APP-152 - Building Setback Pursuant to paragraph 8(c) of PNAP APP-152, "columns supporting the building above may be permitted within the setback areas subject to requirements as shown in Figure C2 of Appendix C."</p>  <p>Fig. C2 Building setback as detailed in paragraphs 7(a) and 8(c)</p> <p>(i) <i>Is the 3m column separation refer to structural dimension and that cladding finish (90mm thick) for such column can exist within the 3m separation?</i></p> <p>(ii) Similarly, can cladding finish exist within the setback dimension "(7.5m+d)"?</p>	
		<u>BD clarified</u>	BD confirmed that the dimension for the setback and column separation should be measured from the finished surface.	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
3000	1/2020 APSEC Discussion Forum on 10 January 2020	<u>Questions</u>	<p>PNAP APP-23 Clear Width in Covered Walkway According to paragraph 9 of PNAP APP-23 and Clause 3.2.2 of Code of Practice for Demolition of Buildings 2004, we understand the width of the covered walkway relates to the width of existing pavement and the minimum clear width of covered walkway on existing pavement over 3m wide is 2m. It is presumed the prescriptive requirements were agreed among government departments.</p> <p>In a recent case, covered walkway with 2m internal clear width was rejected and AP was required to provide pedestrian flow assessment and demonstrate any adverse effect to the pedestrian circulation pattern due to the footings of the covered walkway, The width of the covered walkway was eventually increased to >2m and of cantilever design.</p> <p>We see there is chance that the hoarding permit may be rejected even though the hoarding design conformed to prescriptive requirements and additional traffic assessment may be required as considered necessary by relevant authorities. We hope BD will consider updating the relevant practice notes to reflect the situation so that stakeholders could be aware and allow sufficient time for extra preparation work/traffic studies beforehand in order to secure timely issuance of hoarding permit.</p>	
		<u>BD clarified</u>	<p>BD noted that this was an individual case where Transport Department required pedestrian flow assessment. BD would liaise with Transport Department and revert in due course.</p>	
	4/2020 APSEC Discussion Forum on 26 November 2020	<u>Questions</u>	<p>Service Lane B(P)R 28 requires that every domestic building shall be provided with a service lane, would BD please confirm if the following scenarios are considered acceptable:</p> <p>Scenario 1 <i>When there is an existing service lane of 1.8m wide adjoining the site, the building on the site is to set back 600mm from the lot boundary such that 1.5m width measured from the centreline of the service lane to the building on the site is provided. Upon development of the opposite site, a lane of not less than 3m wide could be achieved.</i></p>  <p>PLAN OF EXISTING SERVICE LANE (SCENARIO 1) (CLASS A SITE)</p>	

DATA	Related Requisitions		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
3000	4/2020 APSEC Discussion Forum on 26 November 2020		<p>Scenario 2 When there is no existing service lane and the site is abutting an existingslope, the building on the site is to set back 1.5m from the lot boundary as shown in the diagram.</p>  <p>PLAN OF SET BACK FOR SERVICE LANE OF REDEVELOPMENT (SCENARIO 2) (CLASS A SITE)</p>	
		BD clarified	<p>BD advised that, pursuant to paragraph 10 of PNAP APP-73, the long-term objective was that upon full development of abutting sites, a lane would be direct and have an unobstructed width of not less than 3m. In this connection, if there were sites abutting on both sides of the lane, a setback of 1.5m on each side would be acceptable, otherwise a setback of 3m should be provided. For Scenario 1, if the existing 1.8m service lane was a public lane, then a setback of 600mm would be acceptable on each side. On the other hand, if the existing 1.8m service lane was a private lane (no matter the site had the right of way over such private lane), a setback of 1.5m should be provided. For Scenario 2, if there was no building site at the other side, then a setback of 3m should be provided.</p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
3500	Building (Construction) Regulations (Cap. 123 sub. leg. B)	9A. Building design and construction in connection with lifts and escalators	<p>(5) This regulation applies to buildings in which a lift or escalator is to be installed other than—</p> <p>(a) a lift or hoist provided, in connection with any building which is being constructed, for the use solely of persons employed in the construction thereof or for carrying materials used therein;</p> <p>(b) a lift or hoist used solely for the carriage, stacking, loading or unloading of goods or materials—</p> <p><i>(i) which does not pass through any floor; and</i></p> <p><i>(ii) the height of travel of which does not exceed 3.5 m;</i></p> <p>(c) a lift or hoist used solely for the raising of motor vehicles—</p> <p>(i) which does not pass through any floor; and</p> <p><i>(ii) the height of travel of which does not exceed 3.5 m;</i></p>	
	Building (Construction) Regulation (Cap. 123 sub. leg. Q)	Division 2—Lift and Escalator	<p>Escalator39.</p> <p>Application and interpretation—Division 2 (1)</p> <p>This Division applies to a building in which a lift or escalator is installed or is to be installed other than—</p> <p>(a) an amusement device, including an amusement ride as defined by section 2(1) of the Amusement Rides (Safety) Ordinance (Cap. 449);</p> <p>(b) a belt, bucket, scoop or roller conveyor or any similar machine;</p> <p>(c) a hoist, including a skip hoist, used mainly for charging furnaces or similar appliances;</p> <p>(d) a hoist used solely for lifting or feeding material directly into a machine or used solely for both of those purposes;</p> <p>(e) <i>a lift the height of travel of which does not exceed 3.5 m and that— (i) does not pass through any floor; and</i></p>	

DATA	Related Requilations		Decriptions	Remarks
	Manuals	Page/Table		
			<p>(ii) is used solely for the carriage, stacking, loading or unloading of any goods or materials or any 2 or more of those purposes;</p> <p>(f) a lift the height of travel of which does not exceed 3.5 m and that—</p> <p>(i) does not pass through any floor; and</p> <p>(ii) is used solely for raising motor vehicles;</p> <p>(g) a lift that is provided, in connection with a building under construction, solely—</p> <p>(i) for carrying persons employed in the construction of the building;</p> <p>(ii) for carrying materials used in connection with the construction of the building; or</p> <p>(iii) for carrying persons referred to in subparagraph (i) and materials referred to in subparagraph (ii);</p> <p>(h) a ramp that is connected to a wharf or pier;</p> <p>(i) a stage or orchestra lift;</p> <p>(j) a stairlift with a guided carriage for use by persons (whether or not with a wheelchair) that travels substantially along the direction of a flight of stairs; or</p> <p>(k) a lifting platform for carrying persons with a disability (whether or not with a wheelchair) if—</p> <p>(i) the platform travels between different levels; and</p> <p>(ii) the difference between the highest and lowest of the levels does not exceed 2 m.</p>	